819.



CAESAR

FROM A BUST IN THE MUSEUM OF THE LOUVRE.

Classical Text-Book Series.

CAESAR'S
BELLUM GALLICUM,

(BOOKS III. & IV.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, AND A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

PREFACE.

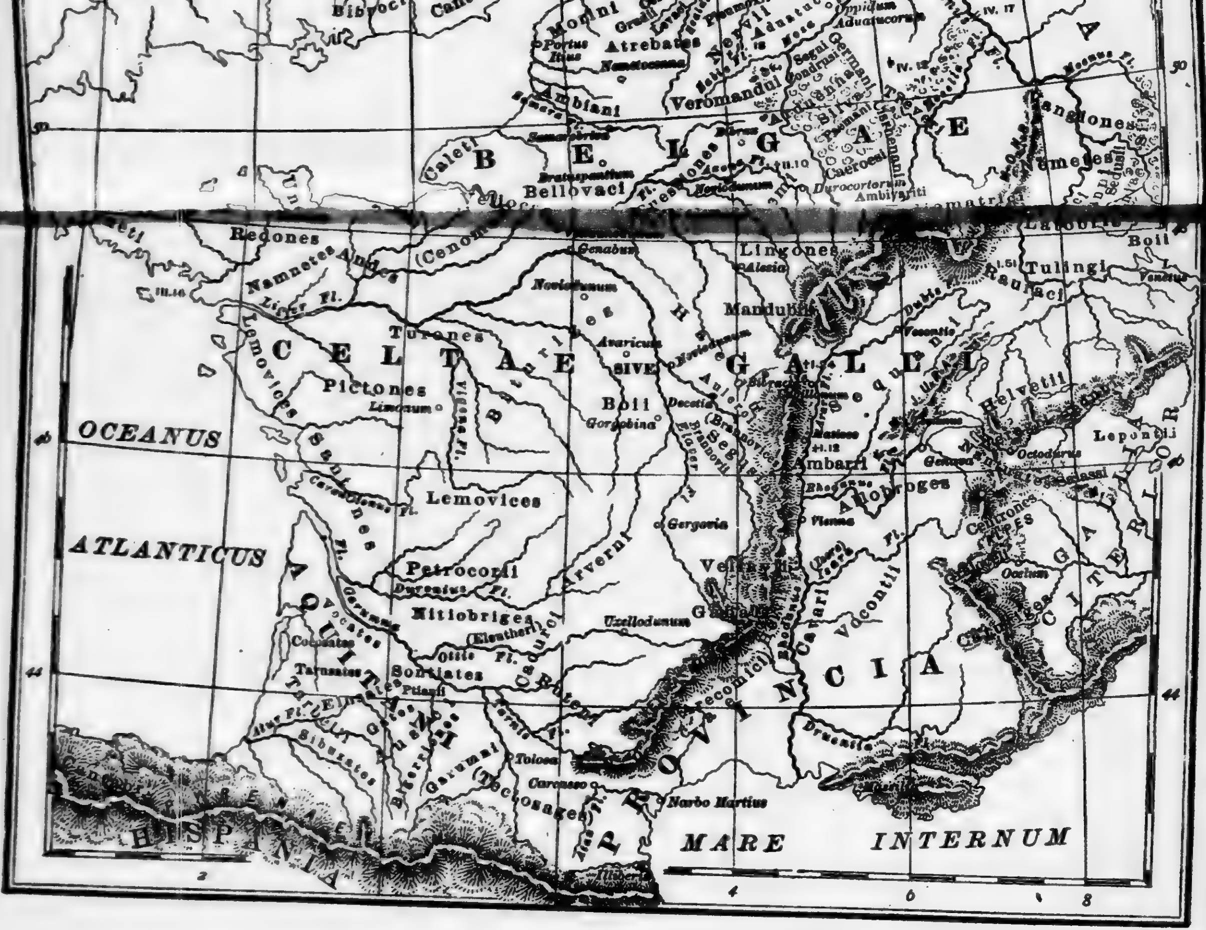
The plan of this edition of Caesar's Gallic War, Books III. and IV., does not differ in any respect from that of the last (third) edition of Books I. and II. The aim in both cases has been to make the scholar familiar with the text of Caesar, and for this purpose copious notes have been given in all cases where a difficulty has appeared. Some teachers may doubt the advisability of giving copious notes to junior pupils. While a danger may arise, if no re-translation into Latin is exacted, the Editor believes that such danger is removed if a pupil is required to write carefully the exercises based on the text and given at the end of the book. No student can write these exercises without having thoroughly mastered the text. The notes, instead of being a hindrance, will aid him in his future study of Caesar or of any other Latin author. The progress of the pupil in classical study will be materially furthered by thus having a good foundation of Latin syntax laid before he begins the study of more difficult Latin authors.

Any suggestion or correction will be gladly received by the Editor, who trusts that this edition will receive the same liberal support that has been given to his former editions of classical texts.

ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,
January 16th, 1892.



Map No. 1.
—GAUL—
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich
4 Long West 2
BRITANNIA
GERMANIA
BELGAE
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
(Deal)
(Dover)
Batavi
Usipetes
Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
Bacenis Silva
Cherusci
Menapii
Eburones
Morini
Atrebates
Nervii
Aduatuci
Veromandui
Ambiani
Caleti
Bellovaci
Treveri
Germani
Caeroesi
Ambivariti
Vangiones
Nemetes
Redones
Lingones
Alesia
Tulingi
Boii



OCEANUS
ATLANTICUS
MARE
INTERNUM
HISPANIA
BELGAE
CELTAE
SIVE
GALLI
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA
GALLIA CITERIOR
Morini
Atrebates
Nervii
Veromandui
Ambiani
Caleti
Bellovaci
Treveri
Vangiones
Nemetes
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
Liger Fl.
Turones
Pictones
Lemovices
Santones
Lemovices
Petrocorii
Nitiobriges
Cocosates
Tarusates
Sontiates
Boii
Gorgobina
Avaricum
Noviodunum
Genabum
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Sequani
Vesontio
Helvetii
Rauraci
Tulingi
Latobrigi
Lepontii
Ambarri
Allobroges
Genava
Octodurus
Vienna
Gergovia
Arverni
Vellavii
Uxellodunum
Cadurci
Ruteni
Vocontii
Cavari
Tolosa
Carcaso
Narbo Martius
Tectosages
Aduatuci
Durocortorum
Bibracte

I
H
w
th
th
er
se

ti
Pi
be
of
so
co
an
de

(m
the
a n
for

102
whi
offi
qua
befo
his
this
repr
Suet
was

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iülus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state. BIRTH. *His family.*

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.[3] *Caesar's father*

[1] Each Roman citizen had usually *three names:* called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

[2] Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15,) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

[3] *Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

Related to Marius.

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

Betrothed to Cossutia.

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

Marries Cornelia.

Goes to the East, and serves his first campaign.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla, Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign nnder M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

Returns home.

Tactics of Caesar.

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the midway between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than

Composition of the Senate.

The three parties at Rome.

the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined with these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.

Goes to Rhodes.

Captured by pirates.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B. C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Elected pontifex.

Reaction against Sylla's policy.

Elected quaestor.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole com-

Marries Pompeia.

mander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithridates, king of Pontus.

Elected curule aedile.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile.* While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B. C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus.* On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

Caesar pontifex maximus.

Elected praetor.

In 62 B. C., Caesar was elected *praetor,* and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate.* Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

Propraetor of Spain.

First Triumvirate.

Julia, Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.

Goes to Gaul.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii who were moving westward, and attempted to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

Gallic campaigns

B. C. 57.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further. *B. C. 56.*

In his fourth campaign, Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain. *B. C. 55.*

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul. *B. C. 54.*

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever. *B. C. 53.*

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection. *B. C. 52*

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops. *B. C. 51.*

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Pharsalia.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B. C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to

Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Thapsus.

Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B. C., Caesar was now the master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

Munda.

In 45 B. C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

Death of Caesar.

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

Caesar's appearance.

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant:—*

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico, in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul, from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili, in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the

Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works*:—

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi*. Dedicated to Cicero, and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or *Auguralia*. Published B. C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata, or *Dicta Collectanea*. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis*, and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

Greek settlement.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C., the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia,

Romans.

Aquae Sextiae. he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood. *Feuds* About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia.* Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Cimbri and Teutones. In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. *Successive defeats of the Romans.* In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

Cimbri and Teutones separate. The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. *Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.* He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. *Intrigues of Catiline.* During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates

attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Tentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. *Ariovistus invited.* Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in battle at Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration. *Emigration of Helvetii*

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. *Caesar Consul* Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helvetii were on the move westward. *Sets out to Gaul.*

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass *(phalanx)*, a method very common among the Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies, called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first *(hastati)* were the youngest men, in the second *(principes)* were

men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion :

Hastati : — — — — — — — — — —
Principes : — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii : — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurian commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century Thus we have :

Hastati :	10 manipuli,	120 men	=20 centuries,	60 men	=	1,200
Principes :	10 "	120 "	=20 "	60 "	=	1,200
Triarii :	10 "	60 "	=20 "	30 "	=	600
	30		60			3,000
			To every century, 20 velites		=	1,200
						4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion were attached 10 *turma*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the two first lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

Officers. The officers of the army were :

Centurions. (a) *Centurions* (*Centuriones*) *:* These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third

maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

(b) *Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum):* These were six to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune. *Tribunes.*

(c) *Lieutenants (Legati):* These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the *praefecti equitum* and *decuriones.* *Legati.*

The *weapons* of a Roman soldier were of two kinds:

(1) *Offensive weapons.* The ordinary soldier *(miles legionarius)* was armed with (a) *the javelin.* Of this there were four kinds: *pilum, jaculum, hasta, lancea.* The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which was a strong sharp iron point about two feet long attached. The *jaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum,* while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *jaculum, hasta,* and *lancea.* Some of the latter carried bows *(arcus),* and arrows *(sagittae),* slings *(fundae).* *Arms.*

(b) *The sword (gladius)* was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt *(balteus).*

(2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet (cassis),* surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass (lorica),* made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates; (c) *greaves (ocreae),* reaching as high as the knee; (d) *a shield,* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim *(scutum),* or made of bronze and of an oval shape *(clipeus).* The light armed troops had a small buckler *(parma)* and a helmet of leather *(galea).* The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic *(tunica),* a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak *(sagum)* was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum.*

Standards. The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. It was generally borne by the first centurion (*primpilus*). To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

Musical instruments. The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry; (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions: (a) *agmen primum*, or van; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldiers carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcinae*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*), were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An enbankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the

enemy; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores*; *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

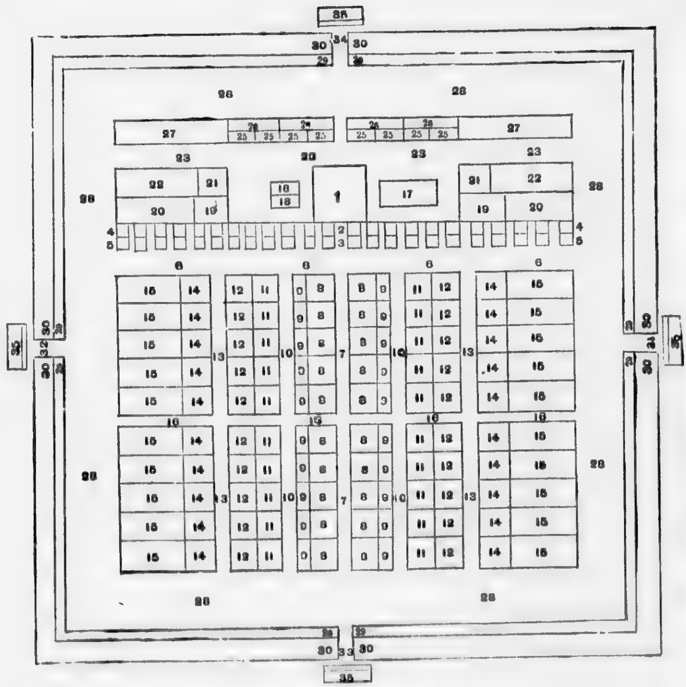
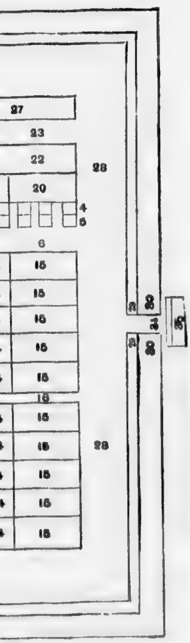


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.



EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum.*
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum.*
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum.*
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum.*
6. Street, 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis.*
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse *(equites)* of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse *(evocati equites).*
20. The veteran foot *(evocati pedites).*
21. The horse of the consular life guards *(ablecti equites).*
22. The foot of the consular life guards *(ablecti pedites).*
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart *(vallum).*
30. Ditch *(fossa)*, 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra.*
32. *Porta principalis sinistra.*
33. *Porta decumana.*
34. *Porta praetoria.*
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

c

I

su
qu
co
tu
se
pu
fa
re
Oc
pla
pa
alt
bui

T
a

Ga
der
aliq
que
eam
sing
prop
tate

JULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER TERTIUS.

Caesar sends Galba to open up a new route from Italy to Gaul.

I. QUUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima, et parte equitatus, in Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis, et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare: qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adjecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Quum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis concessit, alteram, vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

The natives attack the Romans,

II. Quum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus; propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, quum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent, et tela

conjicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant: et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

who are in serious danger,

III. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, quum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, quum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope jam desperata salute, nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

and almost overwhelmed.

IV. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conjicere: nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere: ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere, et auxilium ferre: sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

Things at a crisis when a sally is ordered.

V. Quum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius

Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

The camp is saved, but the Romans retire.

VI. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt; et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas, perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

A new rising in Gaul; its causes.

VII. His rebus gestis, quum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis atque ita, inita hieme, in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire, et regiones cognoscere, volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates, frumenti commeatusque petendi causa, dimisit: quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius,

missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus, in Curiosolitas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

The influence of the Veneti who headed the rising.

VIII. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum; quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt, et, in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerant, habent vectigales. Ab iis fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celeriter missis legatis, per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos, eundemque omnes fortunae exitum esse laturos; reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a majoribus acceperant, permanere, quam Romanorum servitutem perferre, mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta, communem legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

Preparations made on both sides.

IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligeri, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex Provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, quum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti, reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod quantum in se facinus admisissent intelligebant—legatos, quod nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula conjectos—pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant: neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant: ac jam, ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen

se plurimum navibus posse: Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse: ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari, atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

The campaign difficult, but necessary.

X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum; rebellio facta post deditionem; defectio datis obsidibus; tot civitatum conjuratio; in primis, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes idem sibi licere arbitrarentur. Itaque quum intelligeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere, et conditionem servitutis odisse; priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

Distribution of the Roman troops.

XI. Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treviros, qui proximi Rheno flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jusserat, praeficit, et, quum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

The towns of the enemy almost inaccessible.

XII. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita in extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, quum ex alto se aestus incitavisset—quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio—neque navibus, quod, rursus minuente aestu, naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac, si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur; summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

The character of the enemy's fleet.

XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinae aliquanto planiores, quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent: prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: transtra pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis, digiti pollicis crassitudine: ancorae, pro funibus, ferreis catenis revinctae: pelles pro velis, alutaeque tenuiter confectae, sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri, ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua, pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora: neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant, tanta in eis erat firmitudo; neque propter altitudinem facile telum adjiciebatur; et eadem de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, quum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vadis consisterent tutius, et, ab aestu derelictae, nihil saxa et cautes timerent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

The naval victory won by the Romans by an ingenious contrivance.

XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi, neque his noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris adversae constiterunt: neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutae, insertae affixaeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. His quum funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennae necessario concidebant, ut, quum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

The destruction of the enemy's fleet.

XV. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, quum singulas binae ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, quum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenerint, quum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

The punishment of the people on the sea-board.

XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam, quum omnis juventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant; tum, navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coegerant: quibus amissis, reliqui, neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub corona vendidit.

Sabinus goes among the Unelli.

XVII. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Unellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat. Atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices, Lexoviique, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerant, quos spes praedandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agricultura et quotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, quum Viridovix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret; ut jam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur: tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco, aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

He over-reaches them by strategy.

XVIII. Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat; et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis

prematur, docet: neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, (cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum), spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti, non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa, laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

and inflicts a crushing defeat.

XIX. Locus erat castrorum editus, et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus, suos hortatus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatigatione, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent, ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consequuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt: reliquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic, uno tempore, et de navali pugna Sabinus, et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam, ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

Crassus in Aquitania.

XX. Eodem fere tempore, Publius Crassus, quum in Aquitaniam pervenisset—quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine, et multitudine hominum, ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda—quum intelligeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius Manilius,

proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat. Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa, Carcasone, et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae Provinciae, finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiatum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coactis, equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre proelium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, proelium renovarunt.

Defeats the Sotiates and takes their chief town.

XXI. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, quum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis freti, in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent, perspici cuperent. Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis—cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt—ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

An attempt to retake the town is frustrated.

XXII. Atque, in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant—quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiae devovissent, mortem recusaret—cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, quum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum

esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur ab Crasso impetravit.

The remaining peoples make great efforts,

XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum, et natura loci et manu munitum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoversus dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae, finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate, et magna cum hominum multitudine, bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine Populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere; ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari; in dies hostium numerum augeri; non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

but seek to avoid a pitched battle.

XXIV. Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilii caperent exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et veterem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrorum, se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis, inferiores animo, adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta, Crassus (quum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent; atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur) cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

The Romans attack their camp,

XXV. Ibi quum alii fossas complerent, alii, multis telis conjectis, defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent auxiliaresque (quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat) lapidibus telisque subministrandis, et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent; quum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur, telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent; equites, circuitis hostium castris, Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita, facilemque aditum habere.

and take it; the crushing defeat of the enemy.

XXVI. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris relictae intritae ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt, atque, his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab iis videri, aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones dejicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

The great part of Aquitania submits to Crassus.

XXVII. Hac audita pugna, magna pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Garites, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates. Paucae ultimae nationes, anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

Caesar marches against the Morini and Menapii.

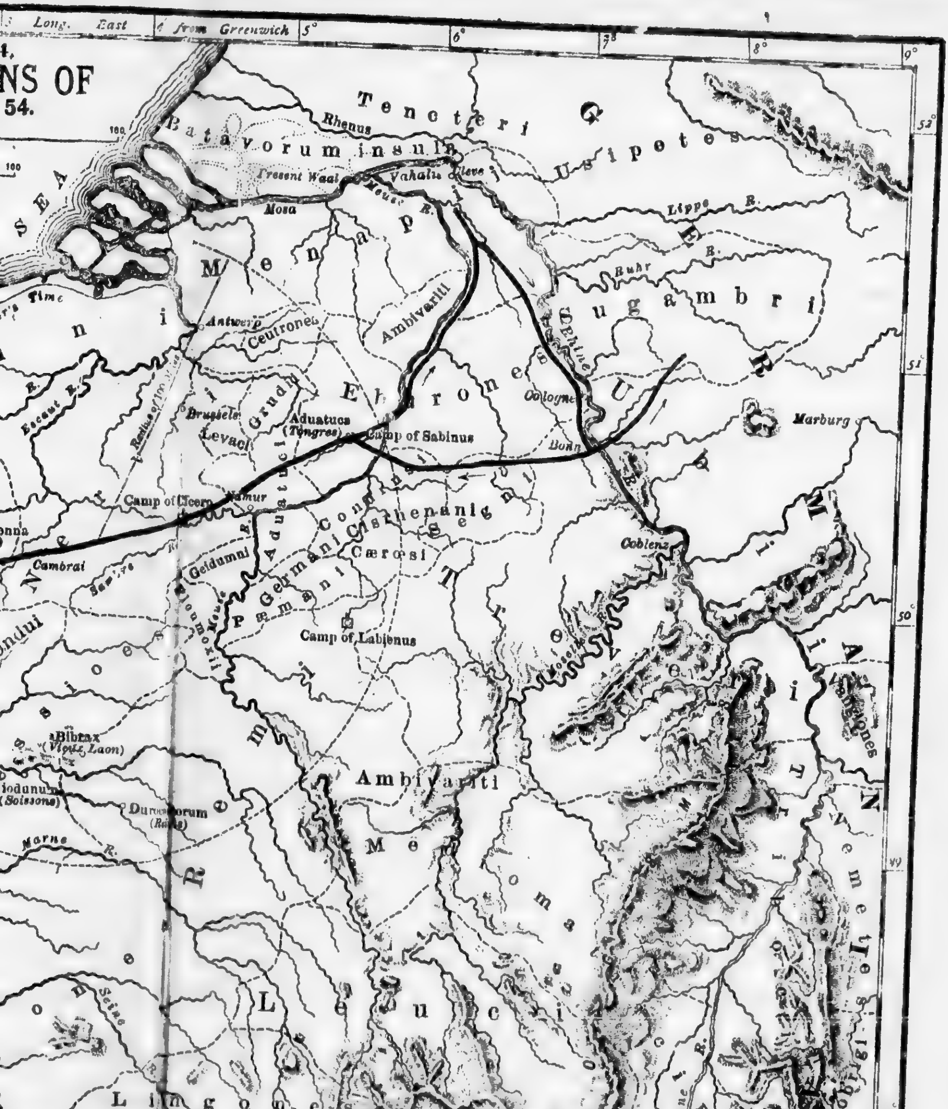
XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quod, omni Gallia pacata, Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit: qui longe alia ratione, ac reliqui Galli, bellum agere

instituerunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum quum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas re[illegible]runt, et, compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis sequuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

but makes little headway. End of the campaign of 56 B.C.

XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, quum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent; ejusmodi sunt tempestates consequutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et, continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.


Map No. 4.
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55 and 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type
Long. East from Greenwich
BRITANNIA
Tamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantium
Deal
Dover
Hastings
NORTH SEA
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Sea coast in Cæsar's Time
Calais
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)
Morini
Menapii
Batavorum
Antwerp
Brussels
Levaci
Camp of Fabius
St. Pol
Atrebates
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Camp of Cicero
Namur
Cambrai
Nervii
Ambiani
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius
Veromandui
Caletes
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium (Breteuil)
Camp of Crassus
Rouen
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Lisieux
Camp of Plancus
Bibrax (Vieux Laon)
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Durocortorum (Reims)
Aul. Eburovices
Evreux
Seine R.
Marne R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Esuvii
Camp of Roscius
Carnutes
Chartres
Aul. Cenomani
le Mans
Melodunum (Melun)
Senones
Agedincum (Sens)
Lingones
Remi
Geidumni
Sambre
Meuse
Lys R.
Escaut R.



NS OF
54.
Long. East
from Greenwich
5°
6°
7°
8°
9°
52°
51°
50°
49°
48°
SEA
Rhenus
Tencteri
Batavorum insula
Usipetes
Present Waal
Vahalis
Cleve
Mosa
Meuse R.
Lippe R.
Ruhr R.
Menapii
Sugambri
Antwerp
Ceutrones
Ambivariti
Rhine
Eburones
Cologne
Marburg
Escaut R.
Radius of 100 Miles
Brussels
Grudii
Aduatuca
(Tongres)
Camp of Sabinus
Levaci
Bonn
Camp of Cicero
Namur
Condrusi
Cisrhenani
Segni
Coblenz
Cambrai
Sambre
Geidumni
Germani
Pæmani
Cæroesi
Camp of Labienus
Treveri
Mosella
Bibrax
(Vieux Laon)
(Soissons)
Durocortorum
(Reims)
Marne R.
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Remi
Leuci
Seine
Lingones
Rhine R.
Rauraci
Nemetes
Triboci
Vangiones

U
T
m
Ga
by
C
th

et a
bel
dic
cau
illo
rem
mit
long
mul
mul
diar
disc
vire
in ea
vest
taten

II
cepe
porta
delec
non u

C. JULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER QUARTUS.

Usipetes and Tenchtheri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suevi. Customs of the Suevi.

I. EA, quae sequuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani, et item Tenchtheri, magna cum multitudine hominum, flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere, et quotidiana exercitatione, et libertate vitae (quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit, et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt. ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus, praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Gallia delectatur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur: sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia,

haec quotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, quum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

The Suevi reduce the Ubii to a tributary state.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quam sunt ejusdem generis ceteri humaniores; propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos quum Suevi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Menapii are surprised by the sudden attack of the Germans.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tenchtheri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi, omnia experti, quum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et, tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt; atque, omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui, de

Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, quum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes a nonnullis civtatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent; omniaque quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar.

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus quum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores Populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur quin armis contendant, quod

Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a majoribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari: haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, ejectos domo. Si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint. Sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint: reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

who refuses to allow them to remain in Gaul.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent: neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare: neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine injuria possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de Suevorum injuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetraturum.

They agree to give him an answer in three days; and ask him not to advance, but he refuses.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt, et, re deliberata, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites, atque ejus rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Geography of the Meuse and the Rhine.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vahalis, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Trevirorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano appropinquat, in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis—quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur—multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

XI. Caesar quum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Quum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet; sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum si Principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, ea conditione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui mora interposita, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

Treacherous attack of the Germans; death of Piso and his brother.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt—quorum erat quinque millium numerus, quum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is dies induciis erat ab eis petitus—impetu facto, celeriter nostros peturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic quum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Quum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat, procul animum advertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The deputies of the enemy apologize for the attack; they are detained. Caesar orders a general advance,

XIII. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur, equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse judicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consequuti, sentiebat: quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermittere, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illico retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

and surprises the Germans who after a brief resistance,

XIV. Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. Qui, omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere an fuga salutem petere, praestaret. Quorum timor quum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruperunt. Quorum qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

are utterly routed by the Romans.

XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, quum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejecerunt: et, quum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt, atque ibi

timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, quum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit; illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

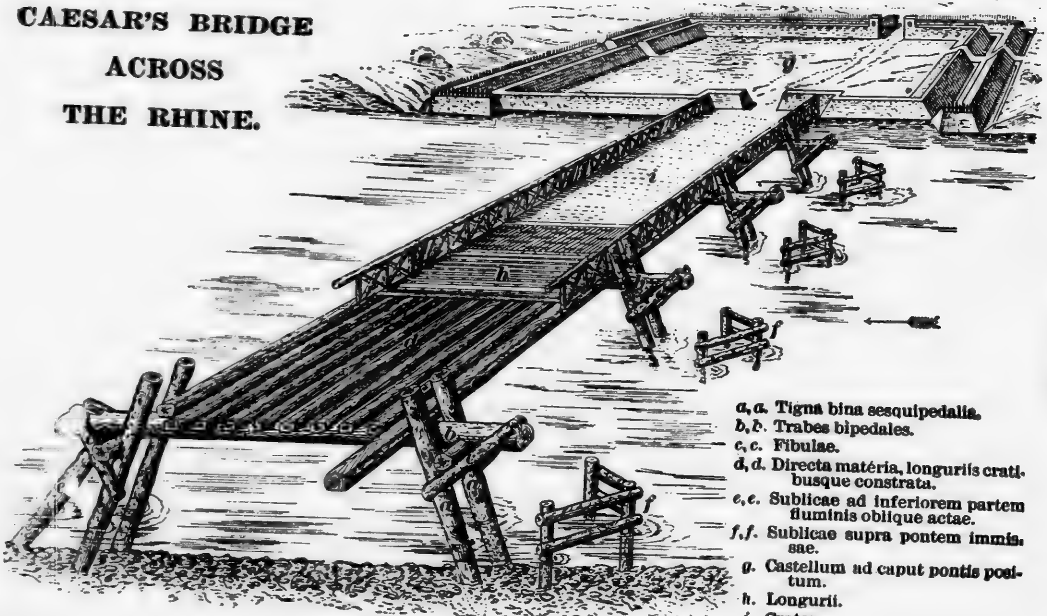
Caesar determines to cross the Rhine, and gives his reasons for so doing.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, quum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, quum intelligerent, et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos quum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia Populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

He constructs a bridge; description of it.

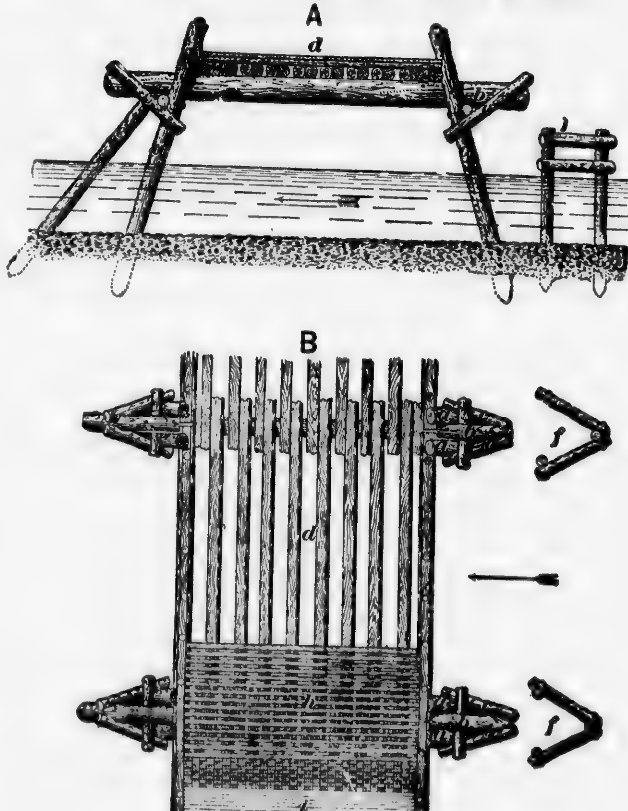
XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



a, a. Tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b, b. Trabes bipedales.
c, c. Fibulae.
d, d. Directa matéria, longuriis cratibusque constrata.
e, e. Sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.
f, f. Sublicae supra pontem immissae.
g. Castellum ad caput pontis positum.
h. Longurii.
i. Crates.

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



A. Cross-section.
B. The Bridge seen from above.

aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. Haec quum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directa ad perpendiculum, sed prona ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; iis item contraria bina, ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materie injecta contexebantur, et longuriis cratibusque consternebantur: ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae, pro pariete subjectae et cum omni opere conjunctae, vim fluminis exciperent: et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves dejiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

In ten days the bridge is finished and Caesar crosses;

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchtheris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

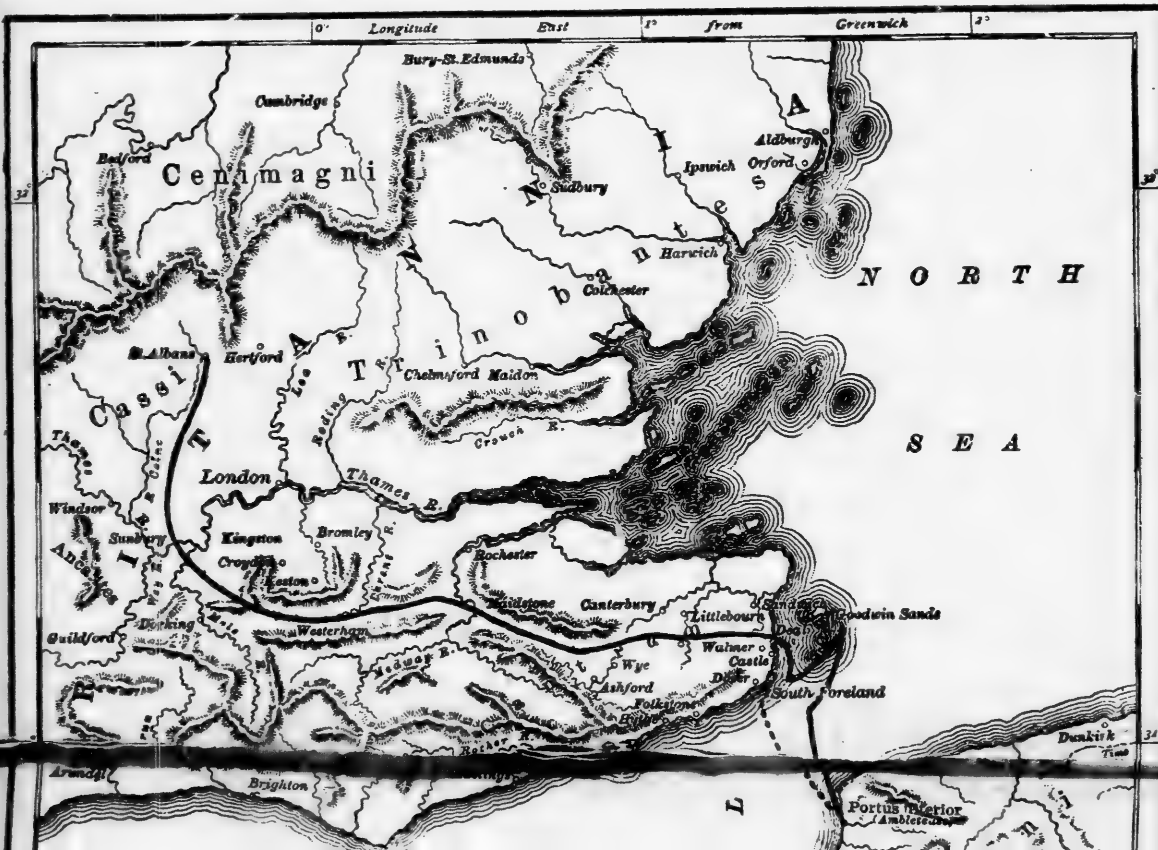
after laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

XIX. Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in

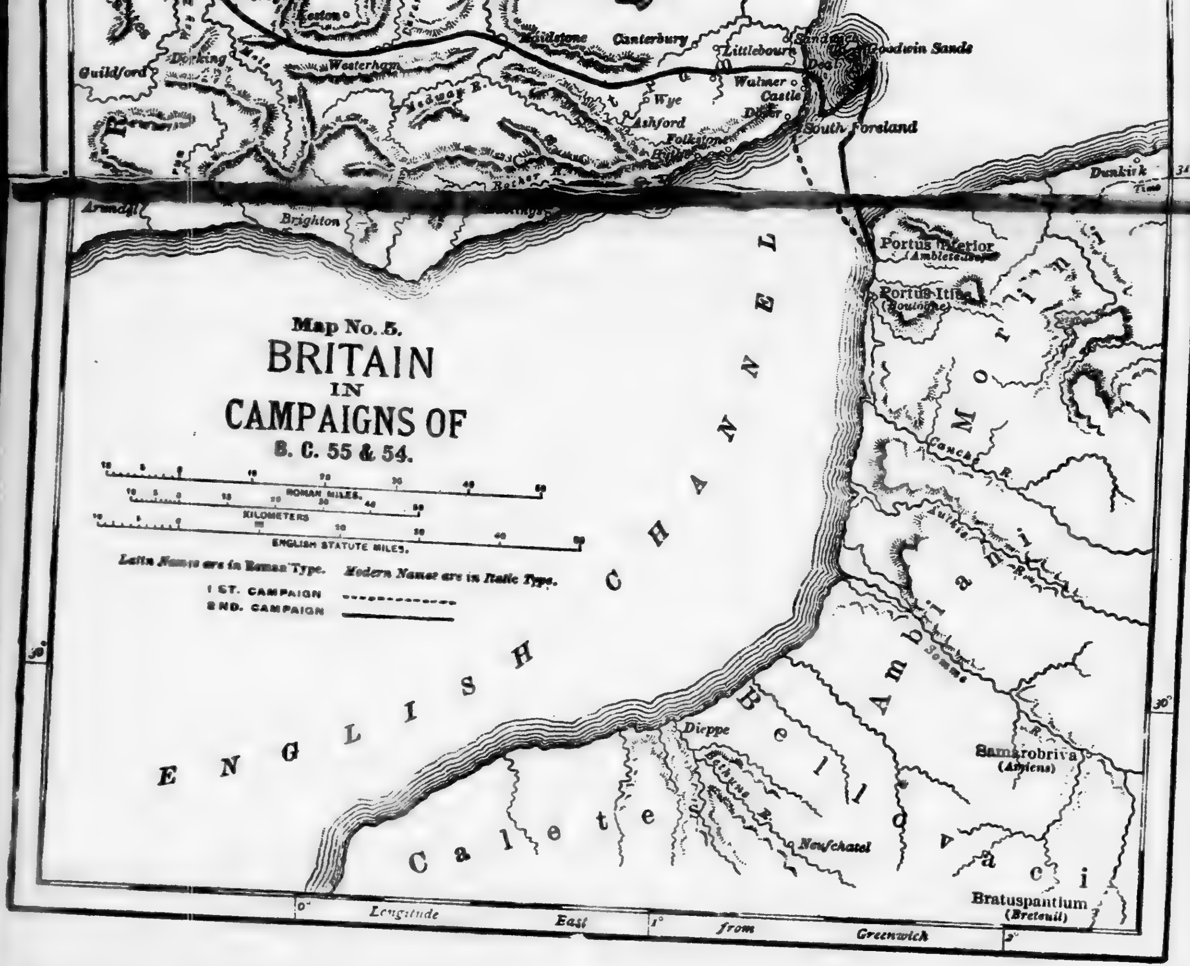
iem pontis
praeacuta,
m inter se
n defixerat
endiculum,
s procum-
ncta, inter-
vim atque
uper bipe-
ctura dis-
ir ; quibus
erat operis
se incita-
rie injecta
ac nihilo
ngebantur,
nctae, vim
cri spatio,
a barbaris
neu pontj

coepta erat
nsducitur.
praesidio
Interim a
cem atque
se adduci
eptus est,
e Usipeti-
ue omnia

moratus,
mentisque
iis auxili-
r, haec ab
ploratores
nuntios in



0°
Longitude
East
1°
from
Greenwich
2°
32°
33°
34°
Bury-St. Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Cenimagni
Sudbury
Ipswich
Orford
Aldburgh
Harwich
Colchester
Trinobantes
NORTH
SEA
St. Albans
Hertford
Chelmsford
Maldon
Lea R.
Roding
Crouch R.
Cassi
Thames
Colne
London
Thames R.
Windsor
Sunbury
Kingston
Bromley
Croydon
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Goodwin Sands
Walmer
Castle
Wye
Ashford
Folkstone
Hythe
South Foreland
Westerham
Dorking
Guildford
Medway R.
Rother R.
Ancalites
Brighton
Dunkirk
Portus Ulterior
(Ambleteuse)


Map No. 5.
BRITAIN
IN
CAMPAIGNS OF
B. C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Guildford
Dorking
Westerham
Medway R.
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Goodwin Sands
Walmer
Castle
Wye
Ashford
South Foreland
Folkstone
Rother R.
Arundel
Brighton
Dunkirk
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Conche R.
Ambiani
Somme
Dieppe
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Bellovaci
Caletes
Neufchatel
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Longitude East from Greenwich
0°
1°
2°
30'

m
a
b
p
N
ip
su
m
qu
qu
m

Se
sen
t
r

cu
sin
reg
cla
cat
ad

omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suevi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar determines to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis—quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Sends Volusenus who returns and reports to him.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio

Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his una Commium—quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur—mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini,

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur quominus in eundum portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

and reaches Britain.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi jussit: a quibus quum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse

hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in anchoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis anchoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The natives attack the Romans.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso, equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; quum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conjicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

Caesar's device; bravery of the standard bearer of the 10th legion; Roman advance.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figura, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac

paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc quum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the enemy.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod quum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, quum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, quum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa

intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae quum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant perfectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quae tamen, anchoris jactis, quum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae, continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies martimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias quae ad anchoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae quum essent —funibus, anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

Conspiracy of British chiefs.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, quum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam

angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum. et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, quum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden attack of the British.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legio[illegible] ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae app[illegible]abatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, quum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Quum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animum advertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interf[illegible]liquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque e[illegible]dis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae; primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et, quum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac praecipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes demiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden attack of the Morini.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus quum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderent Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Quum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui quum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent—quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

NOTES.

NOTES.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

The events of the first six chapters of Book III. belong to the autumn and early winter of 57 B.C.; the other chapters give a narrative of the events of 56 B.C.

quum—Caesar: "when Caesar was on his march to Italy."—*proficisceretur=in itinere esset*: for the force of the imperf. subj.: see H. 521, II. 2; A. & G. 323, 325. The plan of opening up the road through the Alps was formed after Caesar began the march.—*in Italiam*: why is the preposition expressed? Translate: *he set out to Rome*; *he set out to Rome, a large city of Italy; he set out for home; he set out for the house of his father.* Italy Proper (*Italia Propria*) extended north as far as the Rubicon on the east, and the Arnus on the west. Evidently Caesar includes Gallia Cisalpina under the title of *Italia*.

Servium Galbam: afterwards one of the assassins of Caesar (B.C. 44). He was the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba.

cum legione duodecima: Caesar had at this time eight legions in Gaul, numbering from the VII to XIV inclusive. According to Strabo, Caesar had lost two legions under the command of Q. Pedius (II. 2), which had been enrolled for the Belgic campaign. These had been treacherously attacked by the Salassi in ascending the Val d'Aosta. The present expedition was to check the mountain tribes. The *Nantuates* were in the present French Savoy, between the *Veragri* and the *Allobroges*. The *Veragri*, whose chief town was *Octodurus* (Martigny), occupied the Lower Valois, and the *Seduni*, the Upper Valois. Their chief town was *Sedunum* (Sitten or Sion). [See Map. 2.]

parte equitatus: consisting of auxiliaries.

finibus: distinguish in meaning *finis, fines.* What other words differ in meaning in the singular and plural? In Vergil *finis* is masc. or fem.: in Lucretius, only once fem., but in phrases *hac, ea, qua fine or fini* the fem. gen. is constant.

summas Alpes: "the highest part of the Alps." The word *Alpes* is from the Keltic *alp*, "high," or "white": cp. *Albania, Albyn, Albion, Alba, Albula, Albanus.*

mittendi, scil. legionem or *milites*: the object after *mittendi* is sometimes omitted: cp. Ter. Phor. I. 1, 16, *puer causa erit mittendi.* Translate, "the cause thereof was" or "his reason was."

iter per Alpes: Pompey, twenty years before this, had connected Gaul and Italy by a road over Mount Genèvre in a westerly direction. Caesar wished to make now a northern route for general traffic over the Simplon and the great St. Bernard leading from *Octodurus* (Martigny) to *Augusta Praetoria Salassorum* (Aosta) founded some thirty-years after, 26 B.C., by the Val Entrement and the Val du Grand St. Bernard. By this route Napoleon crossed the Alps on his venturesome expedition in May, 1800.

quo—consuerant: "by which traders generally travelled, but only at great risk, and after payment of heavy dues."—*magno—magnis*: note the emphasis gained by placing the adjective before the preposition and also by repetition.—*portoriis*: custom duties levied on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls and the like.—*periculo*: rather refers to the dangers from the lawless mountain tribes than to the perils of the route, though these must have been considerable in the days when no friendly hospice was there.—*mercatores*: often mentioned by Caesar, I, 39; II., 15; IV., 2, 3, 5. 20, 21; VI., 37. These were traders mainly from the Greek colony at *Massilia* (Marseilles), and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp. —*consuerant*: note that *consuevi*, like *odi*, *memini*, *coepi*, is a perfect form with a present meaning. Hence *consuevi*=*soleo*; *consueveram*=*solitus sum*. The contracted forms of the verb are more common than the uncontracted ones.—*patefieri*: compounds of *-facio*, with prepositions generally form the passives in *-ficior*, but with verbal stems and adverbs in *-fio*; as *arefio*, *calefio*, *benefit*, *satisfit*.

huic=*Servio Galbae*.

hiemandi causa: note the position of *causā*, generally after the word or words it governs; cp. *gratiā*.

proeliis—facta: a series of ablative absolutes is occasionally employed to express circumstances which follow in succession; first come the battles, then the capture of the strongholds, later the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages, and finally the ratification of peace. The order of the ablative absolutes will depend on the regard the writer has to variety and precision of expression: Madvig, 4[illegible].—*castellis*: "fortified villages": often used of the hamlets of the Alpine tribes as in Livy, 21, 33.—Distinguish in meaning *expugno* and *oppugno*.

constituit—collocare: when does *constituo* take an infinitive, and when *ut* with the subjunctive? H. 498, I Note; A. & G. 271, a. Translate into Latin: *Caesar resolved to establish a legion at Rome*: *Caesar resolved that the lieutenant should establish a legion at Rome*.

cohortes duas: about 1000 men. Trace the successive meanings of the word *cohors* and the connection with our word *court*.

vico: the *vicus* was a row or group of houses in the open country in oppsition to *oppidum*, a walled town. With the root VIC are connected Fοῖκος, *vicus*, *vicinus*; English—[illegible], in Brunswick, Hawick.

Octodurus: the modern Martigny or Martinach. The name *Octo-dur-us* contains the Keltic *dwr*, 'a river.'

qui—continetur: "this hamlet lies in a valley with a plain of no great extent adjoining and is shut in on every side by very high mountains."—

vicus: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness of expression is required: cp. note, Caesar, B. I., 6.

flumine: to-day called the Drance, which flows into the bend of the Rhine not far from *Octodurus* (Martigny).

alteram—relictam: "the other part left free from them." The preposition follows *vacuam*, not *relictam*: see Bell. Gall. II., 1, 2: *vacuum ab defensoribus.*

eum locum: the post occupied by the Romans.

CHAPTER II.

quum dies—jussisset: "when several days of life in winter quarters had passed and he had ordered corn to be brought thither."—*hibernorum*, scil. *castrorum*, said of time as *eo* is of place.—*eo* = *in eam partem vici Octoduri* or *in eum locum*. When does *quum* take the subjunctive, and when the indicative?

exploratores: legionary soldiers sent out to pick up intelligence, if single, are termed *speculatores*; if, in parties, *exploratores*. Distinguish *per exploratores, ab exploratoribus*: H. 415, I., I. N. I.; A. & G. 246, b.

concesserat—impenderent: the indicative proves that the remark is Caesar's own, while the subjunctive shows that the statement is given on the authority of others: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.—*montes*, evidently here low heights, for a javelin could be hurled from them.

noctu: an old ablative: cp. *diu*, *interdiu.*

id aliquot—caperent: *id* refers to what precedes, and *ut—caperent* is added to give more information: "that—their unexpected resolve to renew the war and crush the legion—had happened from several causes," or "several causes had contributed to this—their sudden resolve," &c.: cp. Caesar, Bell. Gall. I., 4: *damnatum—poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur*: the clause *ut igni cremaretur* defines *poenam*; so often.—*accidere* is here as elsewhere of unforeseen or unfavourable events.

primum—despiciebant: "in the first place, because they held in contempt that legion on account of its small numbers, and that not fully complete, inasmuch as two cohorts had been taken from it and several individuals, who had been detailed for the purpose of obtaining supplies for those who were absent." The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the fight with the Nervii (B. II. c. 23).—*commeatus* is genitive. The soldiers had gone to get supplies either from the merchants (*mercatores*), or the natives peacefully (B. II, c. 9), and not by foraging (*pabulatio* or *frumentatio*). The adverb *singillatim* = *singuli*: as *privatim* = *privati*: cp. Bell. Gall. I., 17: *esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus.*

tum etiam: "secondly": cp. *primum*, above.

iniquitatem loci: "the disadvantages of the position," of our men.

ipsi: the mountaineers. Explain fully the mood and tense of *decurrerent* and *conjicerent.*

ne primum quidem impetum suum: "not even their first onset": note the emphatic word is placed between *ne—quidem.*

accedebat—habebant: "to this was added their resentment at their children being torn away from them as hostages, and their conviction that the Romans, not merely for the purpose of making roads, but for the purpose of permanent occupation were atttempting to get possession of the heights of the Alps, and to unite these places to the neighboring province." The phrase *accedebat quod* may be rendered: "and moreover"; literally, "there was added that": the *quod* clause is the subject of *accedebat*. Distinguish *accedit ut*, introducing a historical fact, and *accedit quod*, giving a reason. Caesar here, as often, frankly gives the true reason of the outbreak: cp. V., 54; VII., 77.—*obsidum nomine*, "as hostages": cp. B. VI., 19, *dotis nomine*; VII., 89, *praedae nomine*.—*persuasum habebant* like *cognitum habebant*: *persuasum* is neut. sing. acc. agreeing with the clause *Romanos—adjungere*: of course *sibi* depends on *persuasum*.

CHAPTER III.

his—acceptis: express this in other ways.

opus hibernorum scil. *castrorum*: "the work on the winter quarters," may refer to the work on the winter quarters as a whole, while the *munitiones* are the several defences comprising these. Others take *opus hibernorum* to include the laying out of streets, the adapting of the buildings already standing for the use of the soldiers, the erection of huts, etc., while *munitiones* refers to the construction of the fortifications, the wall and the ramparts mentioned in Chap. I., *sub finem*. Note that *perfectae* agrees with the nearest nominative.

neque provisum: "nor had sufficient provision been made for corn and other supplies." What is the difference between *providere* with acc.; with dat. and with *de* and ablative? Often *frumentum* and *commeatus* without *reliquus* are used together since *commeatus* includes supplies other than corn (*frumentum*); B. I., 39, 48; III., 23. Sometimes *reliquus* is added as here.

consilio: a council of war probably composed of the *tribuni militum* and *centuriones primorum ordinum*, i.e., the eight centurions in command of the eight cohorts there encamped. Distinguish *consilium*, a select deliberate body, each member of which contributes something to the debate and hence often applied to a council of war; *concilium*, a large mass meeting assembled for some public purpose to accept or reject some proposal made.

tantum repentini periculi = *tantum et tam repentinum periculum*.

praeter opinionem: "contrary to expectation." See note on *acciderat* Chapter II. Distinguish between *nunc*, "at the present moment," and *jam*, "already," implying an act going on for some time in the past.

completa—conspicerentur: "were seen filled." This participial construction is common in Greek and English, but not often found in Latin.

neque—possent: "and neither could relief come nor supplies be brought up as the roads behind them were closed." After *veniri* supply *posset* from the *possent* which agrees with *commeatus* the nearest subject: literally, "could it be come up for (their) relief": the passive *veniri* is frequently

used impersonally : cp. B. C. I, 67 : *plerique censebant posse prius ad angustias veniri quam sentiretur* : H. 465, I., IV.—*subsidio* is a dative of service : H. 390 ; A. & G. 233.—*itineribus* : H. 420, I.; A. & G. 258, g.

desperata salute : Cicero always says *desperare salutem* : Caesar always, *desperare de salute* except in chap. XII., infra ; and B. VII., 50 when a dative is used, but in the ablative absolute construction he uses *desperare salutem* : B. V., 37 ; B. VI., 5. So also *desperata fuga, victoria.*

impedimentis relictis eruptione facta : these two ablative absolutes are not connected by a conjunction because the one is really subordinate to the other : "upon leaving the baggage if a sally was made" =*si, impedimentis relictis, eruptio facta esset.*

ad salutem contenderent : the expression seems to stand midway between the literal meaning of *contendere*, in *contendere ad oppidum*, when a definite locality is reached and *contendere ad laudem, gloriam* in which *contendere* means "to strive to attain" : cp. Cic. Phil. XIV., 32 : *ad laudem gloriamque contendere.*—*salutem*, probably "a place of safety."

hoc reservato—defendere : "to reserve this plan to the last, and in the meantime to wait for results and defend the camp."—*placet* : *placet*, *non placet* are the technical words in the Roman senate : *placet*, "I vote yea :" *non placet*, "I vote nay" ; with *placet* scil. *mihi.*

CHAPTER IV.

brevi—daretur : "a short space having intervened, so short, that time was scarely allowed for arranging and carrying out those things which they had determined (to arrange and carry out)."—*brevi* is put first for emphasis : so also we have inversion in order in *vix ut* for *ut vix* : cp. Bell. Gall. I., 9.: *vix qua singuli carri ducerentur* : here also *vix* is put first for emphasis. So also we have inversion with *vix* in Bell. Gall., B. II., 28, *vix ad quingentos.*—*constituissent* scil. *collocare et administrare* : *constituissent* is in subjunctive by attraction : H. 529, II ; A. & G., 342.—*collocare* is here "to arrange," literally, "to put in place" : cp. Bell. Alex. 33 : *sic rebus omnibus confertis et collocatis* ; Cic. Epist. ad. Brutum I., 15 : *ad collocandum civitatis statum.*

decurrere—conjicere—repugnare—mittere—occurrere—ferre : historical infinitives put for the indicative : H. 536, I ; A. & G. 275. A succession of these is often used in rapid and animated description.

gaesa : the *gaesum* was a Gallic spear and probably a Keltic word. It seems to have been a common weapon among the Alpine tribes : cp. Verg. Æn. VIII., 661 : *Alpina coruscant Gaesa manu.* They are described as javelins with a thick shaft and barbed iron head of extraordinary length.

nostri—mittere : "at first our men, so long as their strength remained unbroken, boldly withstood them, and hurled no dart without effect, since the ground they occupied was higher (than that occupied by the enemy)."—*nostri*, scil. *milites.*—*integris viribus* : abl. absol.: H. 431 : A. & G. 255.—*ex loco superiore* : the prepositional abl. absol. is often used

when regularly we should have a present part. of *sum* which does not exist: cp. Bell. Gall. I., 33: *in tanto imperio*: *in tanta rerum iniquitate*. The Roman soldiers occupied the rampart (*vallum*).

ut—succedebant: "as each part of the camp stripped of defenders seemed to be hard pressed (by the enemy), to this part they rushed and brought aid, but they were put to a disadvantage by this, that the enemy, exhausted by the length of the battle, withdrew from the fight, (whilst) the other enemies with unimpaired strength relieved them."—*defensoribus*: abl. separation: H. 414, 1; A. & G. 243.—*premi*, scil. *ab hostibus*.—*eo*=*in eam partem*.—*defessi*: a very strong word: *defatigatus* expresses lassitude merely, not exhaustion.—*proelio*: H. 413; A. & G. 243, c.—*alii*, scil. *hostes*.—*integris viribus*: see above.

ac non modo—dabatur: "and not only to an exhausted man was the power of withdrawing from the fight not given, but not even to a mounted soldier was the opportunity afforded of leaving the spot where he had taken his stand, and of betaking himself to a place of safety."—*non modo* =*non modo non*: the second *non* may be omitted, as here, only when a negative (as *ne quidem* in this passage) follows, and then only when both clauses have a common predicate (as *dabatur*). It would be incorrect to omit the second *non* in such a sentence as *non modo non interfectus est, sed ne levissimum quidem vulnus accepit*: cp. the omission of the second οὐ in the phrase οὐ μόνον οὐ in Greek.—*defesso*, scil. *cuiquam*.—*sui recipiendi*: see H. 543; A. & G. 298.

CHAPTER V.

jam: "already."

amplius horis sex: the construction with the accusative is more common.

pugnaretur: H. 469 II., 2; A. & G. 277, b.

nostris deficerent: *deficere* is also used with the accusative: Bell. Gall. V., 33; VII., 50.

languidioribus nostris: "and while our troops were becoming more faint": H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.

vallum scindere: "to tear down the palisades" (*valli*), and thus effect an entrance.

fossas: plural, though there was probably only one ditch around the camp.

resque—casum: "and when the battle was by this time brought to a final crisis." *Res* is a generic word and may have a wide application.

primi pili centurio: originally the first centurion of the *triarii*, afterwards the chief centurion of the legion.

Nervico proelio: "in the battle with the Nervii" mentioned B. II., 25. If *Nerviorum* had been used for *Nervico*, Caesar would have said *in proelio*.

C. Volusenus Quadrigatus: mentioned B. IV., 2; VI., 41; VIII., 23, 48: B. C. III., 60. Caesar elsewhere speaks of him with commendation, and he is the only one of all the tribunes so mentioned.

et consilii et virtutis (*magnae*): "of great resource and bravery": H. 396, v.; A. & G. 215.

si—experirentur: "if they should try the only remedy left them by making a sortie."—*experirentur*: imperf. subj. because *docent* is a historical present: H. 495, II.; 527, I.; A. & G. 287, e; 337.

certiores facit paulisper intermitterent: "he informs them (of his wish) that they should for a little cease fighting": cp. B. C. I., 64: *ut certior fieret ne labori suo parceret.* This construction of *certiorem facere* is only used when a command is implied: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 331, f. Rem. *Parumper* is commonly used when future time is meant as here.—*tantummodo exciperent*: "should merely receive (on their shields) the darts hurled (at them)," *i.e.*, should act simply on the defensive and not hurl a weapon in return.

CHAPTER VI.

quod=id quod.—jussi sunt, scil. *facere.*

omnibus portis: ablative of place *from which*: H. 412, II., 2; A. G. 258, a.—*fieret*: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.

sui colligendi: "of rallying themselves": *sui* is plural referring to *hostibus*: *colligendi* agrees with *sui* in form but not in number: cp. *sui recipiendi*: Chap. V. B. III.

eos—interficiunt: "they surround on all sides and slay those who had entertained the hope of taking the camp."—*potiundorum* old form for *potiendorum*: H. 239. Verbs that do not govern an accusative have no gerundive, but *potior*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *utor*, *vescor* governing the ablative have the gerundive, because in old Latin they govern an accusative.

amplius, as *plus* below, is an adverb without any influence on the construction.

armisque exutis: "and being stripped of their arms"; *armis* is the ablative of separation after *exutis*: H. 414, I; A. & G. 243. The meaning, however, is that they threw away their arms, as Caesar did not take them from the men.

atque—viderat: "and remembered that he had come into winter-quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had found the situation different (from what he had expected)." Note that *meminerat* is perf. in meaning, not pluperf. like *viderat.*—*alio—aliis*: H. 459, I; A. & G. 203, c. Note the absence of the conjunction (*asyndeton*). The idea is that he had to face a state of affairs quite incompatible with the purpose for which he came.

frumenti—commeatusque: see note Chap. III.

reverti: distinguish in meaning *revertor*, "to turn back" on a journey: *redeo*, "to turn back" after a journey is completed. The tenses derived from the present of *revertor* are passive in form; those from the perfect, are active.

Allobrogas: a nation lying along the line from Vienne to Geneva, between the Rhone and the Isère; (cp. B. G. I., 10, where they are men-

tioned as being in the Roman *Provincia*). As soon as Galba had crossed the Tête Noire, he would have a comparatively level march by Chamounix to Sallenchus and so to Vienne.

demorante **:** ***demoror*** is elsewhere used by Caesar, but in Cicero only once.

CHAPTER VII.

quum—est : "though Caesar had every reason to think (literally, thought for all reasons) that Gaul, in consequence of the defeat of the Belgae, the expulsion of the Germans, the conquest of the Seduni (who dwell) among the Alps, and when, under these circumstances, at the beginning of winter he had set out for Illyricum, because he desired to visit those tribes also, and to become acquainted with that district, a war arose suddenly in Gaul." Notice that *quum* is both *causal* and *temporal*.—***pacatam*** : a euphemistic expression for *victam*.—***Belgis superatis*** : see Book II, Chapters I-XXXIII.—***expulsis Germanis*** : referring to the war against Ariovistus, B. I, Chapter XXX-LIV.—***Sedunis*** : the Seduni are mentioned, as they were the most important of the Alpine tribes.—***inita*** : equivalent to *prima*.—***Illyricum=ad Illyricum*** : H. 380 ; A. & G. 258. The provinces of Illyricum and the two Gauls were assigned to Caesar for five years, B. C. 59. In April, 56 B. C., Caesar was at Luca, where he had an interview with Pompey and Crassus, the former of whom he had previously met at Ravenna. The result of this conference was that Pompey and Crassus were to be r[illegible]d consuls for the ensuing year and that Caesar's command wa[illegible]ded for another five years.—***quod—volebat*** : distinguisl[illegible] rom ***quod—vellet*** : H. 516 ; A. & G. 333.—***nationes*** : H. 3[illegible]37, d. What prepositions added to intransitive verbs of motio[illegible] these verbs transitive?

haec : "as follows" : note that *hic* may refer to what follows (corresponding in this case to ὅδε, τοιόσδε in Greek) or to what precedes (corresponding to οὗτος, τοιοῦτος).

proximus mare : "very near the sea," not "next the sea," as the Andes were not contiguous to the Ocean.—*proximus* is used with a dative or accusative ; H. 391, II. 2 ; A. & G. 261, a. With *mare oceanum* : cp. *flumen Rhenus* ; *terra Gallia*. The district of the Andes was in the modern *Anjou*.

praefectos tribunosque militum : the *praefecti* were officers of the allied troops (*socii*) ; the *tribuni militum* officers of the legion, six being attached to each legion, so that each tribune had charge of about 1,000 men and had 10 centurions under him.

quo in numero : the regular Latin expression for "in the number of whom."

Curiosolites lived around Dinan and St. Malo : the *Sesuvii*, in eastern Normandy, about Falaise, while the *Veneti* occupied Vannes, in Bretagne.

CHAPTER VIII.

hujus—earum : taking *amplissima* as a superlative relative translate : "the influence of this state is by far the most extensive of the whole sea-

board of that district": or taking *amplissima* as a superlative absolute which we often find combined with *longe* in Caesar; translate: "the influence of this state is very great indeed over the whole seaboard of that district."

quod—habent: distinguish this from *quod—habeant*: H. 516; A. & G. 333.

in Britanniam navigare: the Veneti probably got from Britain tin and other metals, skins and wool. We also learn from Caesar (Bell. Gall. VI, 13) that Gallic youths were sent to Britain to finish their education under the Druids and the seat of Gallic Druidism was in the district between the Seine and the Loire, near the country of the Veneti.

consuerunt: what verbs have a perfect form with a present meaning? See note on *consuerat*, Chap. I.

scientia atque—rerum: "in the knowledge and especially in the practice of seamanship": H. 424; A. & G. 253. Distinguish in use:—*que*, *et*, *atque*.

in—aperto: "being on an open sea of great violence": hypallage = *in magni impetus mari aperto*: literally, "in a great and exposed onset of the sea": so we have *mitis sapientia Laeli*: "the mild and wise Laelius." Note the prepositional ablative absolute: see note Chap. IV., B. III.

paucis—interjectis: "with few ports at intervals" (on the coast): H. 431; A. & G. 255.

tenent ipsi: "they keep in their own hands"; note the emphatic position of *ipsi*.

omnes fere: what is the usual position of *fere*? The reference is to the fact that from the fewness of the ports many would be compelled to take refuge in the harbors of the Veneti and thus forced to pay tribute. *Vectigales*, properly persons who paid *vectigal*, a general name for taxes levied on goods, lands, &c., and therefore variable with the assessment: *stipendium*, a fixed tax generally paid by conquered states for the maintenance of the Roman army.

ab his—retinendi: "these take the first step by detaining Silius and Velanius."

quod—existimabant: distinguish this from *quod—existimarent*: H. 516; A. & G. 333.

per eos: note that *per* often expresses inferior agency.

Gallorum—consilia: Caesar often refers to the fickle character of the Gauls: the same is true of their modern descendants. *Subitus*, that which comes quick, whether expected or not: *repentinus*, that which comes unexpected.

conjurant: "they form a league."

quam—acceperant: a remark of Caesar's own and hence the indicative. Others read *acceperint*, using the words of the Veneti.

Romanorum servitutem: subjective genitive: "the slavery imposed by the Romans."

si—remittat: turn this into direct narrative.

CHAPTER IX.

quod—longius: as mentioned in a note on Chap. VII., Caesar was at Luca in Etruria in the spring of 56 B. C. Distinguish in meaning *quod aberat* and *quod abesset*: H. 516; A. & G. 333.

naves longas; ships may be conveniently divided into (*a*) *war ships* called by the Romans *naves longae*, because they were long and narrow and, therefore, fitted for swift sailing: (cp. Gk. *νῆες μακραί*, *νῆες ταχεῖαι*) and (*b*) *ships of burden*, called by the Romans, *naves onerariae*: (cp. Gk. *πλοῖα, φορτικά, ὁλκάδες*) made for carrying heavy loads, and, therefore, bulky and broad.

in Oceanum: Caesar ordered the ships to be built on the Loire, on the south side, opposite the spot where the Mayenne flows into it, below Angers. Note that *quod* agrees in gender with the generic word *flumen*, as *Liger* is masc.; so B. II., chap. V.: *flumen Axonam quod.*

institui: "to be procured."

quum primum—potuit: scil, *administrare* from *administratis*: "as soon as he could do so by the time of the year"; *i. e.*, as soon as the season permitted. Distinguish in meaning *quum primum—potuit* and *quum primum—posset* in B. III., chap. XI.—For the force of *per*, cp. B. II., chap. XVI.: *mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur.*

cognito Caesaris adventu: express this in other ways. Some have after *adventu*, *certiores facti* and understand *de magnitudine periculi*. In that case translate: "the Veneti and likewise the rest of the states upon hearing of Caesar's arrival being fully made aware of the extent of the danger": or "when Caesar's arrival was known, being informed (of the fact)."

simul quod—conjectis: "at the same time because they were aware how great a crime they had committed by detaining and casting into prison ambassadors—a title which had always been holy and inviolate among all nations." Distinguish in meaning *facinus*, (from *facio*), a bold, daring crime, generally in a bad sense unless joined with a qualifying adjective: *scelus*, guilt or wickedness; *flagitium*, a disgraceful crime, as adultery.—*admisissent*: for the mood: H. 529; A. & G. 334.—*facinus in me admitto*, literally, "I put a crime upon myself," *i. e.*, I commit a crime.—From *legatos* to *conjectos* is in apposition to *facinus*. Caesar calls the *praefecti* and *tribuni* in chapter VI., *legati* to suit his purpose. For the punishment meted out to those who violated the *jus legatorum*: cp. Cic. de Leg. Man.: chap. V.: *legati quod erant appellati superbius, Corinthum patres vestri, totius Graeciae lumen, extinctum esse voluerunt.*—*ad omnes = apud omnes*: as in I. 31: IV., 16: V. 53: VII. 5.—*fuisset*: H. 529. II.; A. & G. 334.

ad usum navium = ad navigationem: "for sailing," or "for the requirement of ships."

instituunt = incipiunt.

hoc majore spe: "their hopes being higher on this account".—*spe*: abl. absol.; *hoc*: abl. means.

quod—confidebant: the indicative expresses an *actual* fact. What would *confiderent* express? H. 516: A. & G. 333.

aestuariis: the whole coast from the mouth of the Loire to Brest in Finisterre is full of arms of the sea.

locorum: "of the coast."

ac jam ut—acciderent: "nay, allowing that everything was already happening contrary to their expectation." For force of *ut*: H. 515, III; A. & G. 266 c. *Jam ut* with subjunctive followed by *tamen* as here introduce a suppositional case, while *etsi*, with the indicative, followed by *tamen* introduces an actual fact.

posse, scil, *sciebant.*

neque=et non.—ubi=in quibus locis.

longe aliam—atque: "very different from."

in concluso mari: like the Mediterranean.

ubi—constabat: scil., *inter se*: " when it was believed among them."

Lexovios: the name still survives in the modern *Lisieux*: *Diablintes*, in *Jablins*; *Nantuates*, in *Nantes*. The *Morini* were a sea-coast people (from the Keltic *mor*, a sea), whose territories extended from Boulogne northward as far as Dunkerque.

Britannia: this is incorrect. Caesar made the invasion of Britain under the pretext that the Gauls were aided by their countrymen in Britain in their wars against the Romans: B. IV., chap. XX.

CHAPTER X.

erant: note emphatic position: "there were really the following difficulties."

injuriae—Romanorum: "the wrongs done by the detention of the Roman knights." The *legati* mentioned in the previous chapter were of equestrian rank. For the objective genitive: H. 396, III; A. & G. 217: cp. Livy. IV. 32; *scelus legatorum contra jus gentium interfectorum.* The plural *injuriae* shows that several suffered detention.

rebellio—deditionem: "the renewal of the war after submission." Note the meaning of *rebellio.*

in primis—arbitrarentur: scil., *timor*, after *in primis* in apposition to *multa*: "above all the apprehension, that, if he did not attend to this district, the rest of the tribes would think that they might do the same."—*hac parte neglecta=si haec pars neglecta esset.—idem*, subject of *licere*, which is impersonal.—It is generally supposed that the Veneti were afraid that Caesar was, at this time, contemplating an invasion of Britain, and that the conquest of the island would destroy their commerce.

novis rebus studere: (cp. Gk. νεωτερίζειν,); "are fond of a change of government."

et—excitari: cp. B. II., chap. I.; *qui nobilitate et levitate animi novis rebus studebant.* Caesar often mentions fickleness as a characteristic of the Gauls; see note Chapter VIII., B. III.

priusquam—conspirarent: the only case of *conspirare* in Caesar; elsewhere he uses *conjurare.* What two reasons for the subjunctive? H. 520, I. 2; 524; A. & G. 327; 336.

partiendum sibi: for the case of *sibi*: H. 388; A. & G. 232.

CHAPTER XI.

Treveros: the name still exists in the modern Trèves.

proximi flumini: what other constructions are used with *proximi?* H. 391, II. 2; A. & G. 261, a.

huic mandat—adeat—contineat—prohibeat: note that *ut* is often omitted with *mandat*: H. 523, II.; A. & G. 339.

in officio: "in allegiance."

auxilio: dative of purpose: H. 390; A. & G. 233.—*arcessiti*, scil., *esse.*

conentur: for subjunctive: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

cum—duodecim: probably the cohorts were drawn from different legions.

Aquitaniam: the district from the Garonne to the Pyrennees, occupied by the Basques, a different race from the inhabitants of *Gallia* proper.

tantae nationes: the Galli and Aquitani.

qui eam—curet: "to see to the dispersion of this force." Explain the mood of *curet.*

Unelli or *Venelli* dwelt on the peninsula of Cotantin, and had a capital, *Crociatonum*, near Valoques, south of Cherbourg. The Curiosolites bordered on the Redones towards the east and the Veneti to the south. Their name is still preserved in *Corseult*, south of St. Malo. The Pictones or Pictoni were on the south side of the lower Loire. Their name still survives on the modern *Poitou.* Along with the Santones they occupied all the coast from the Loire to the Garonne.

cum primum possit: the subjunctive expresses that his setting out depended on the attendant circumstances: see note, chapter IX., B. II.

CHAPTER XII.

fere: "as a rule": "as a general thing."

situs: note the plural: the English idiom requires the singular. Good examples of such positions would be Mont St. Michael in Normandy and St. Michael's Mount in Cornwall.

in—promontoriisque: "placed at the ends of tongues and headlands." The *lingulae* were low "tongues" of land running out into the sea, of which good examples are the Pointe de Croisic, on which the town of Croisic is situated and the tongue of Quiberon, both insulated at high water. The *promontoria* were high and rocky. It makes little difference whether we write *promontorium* or *promuntorium*; both are connected with the root MIN, "to jut": cp. *mons*, (originally *mins*), *minae.*

pedibus: "on the land side."

aditum haberent=*adire possent*. *Habeo* (as ἔχω in Greek) has often this meaning: cp. *illud affirmare pro certo habeo*: Livy 44. 22.

cum incitavisset: "as often as the tide had set in from the deep": for this force of *cum*: cp. B. III. 13: *cum ventus saevire coepisset*. What is the derivation of *aestus*?

spatio: for the case: H. 429; A. & G. 256.

navibus: construe *erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum ut posita in lingulis promontoriisque neque navibus aditum haberent*.

quod afflictarentur: "because as the tide went down (*i. e.* at ebb tide), any ship would get dashed on the shallows."—*minuente aestu*: H. 431; A. & G. 255.—*minuo* is here intransitive.

utraque re: "by both circumstances," *i. e.* by the ebb and flow of the tide.

ac, si quando—recipiebant: translate the participle by finite verbs for an English version: "and, if ever it so happened, that they were baffled by the extent of our works and began to despair of their success, when the sea had been thrust back by a dyke and dams and then had attained the level of the walls of the town, then they would bring up a number of vessels, for doing which they had the best means, and so remove all the provisions, and withdraw to a neighbouring town."—*extruso—molibus*: at low tide Caesar built two dykes, parallel to each other, to keep out the tide at high water, and when the tide was out, he built a cross wall at the end to keep out the sea. In this way they used each back of the wall as an *agger*. Others take *aggere et molibus* as a hendiadys: "by massive dykes."—*his—adaequatis*: it seems a matter of indifference whether we take *adaequare* intranstive, "to be equal to," and hence *his adaequatis* would be abl. abs. and *moenibus*, a dative, or *adaequare* may be taken transitively "to reach," and then *moenibus adaequatis* is abl. absol., and *his* is abl. of means.—*suis fortunis*: dative: as also in B. VII. 50; *sibi desperans*. Elsewhere Caesar uses *de aliqua re desperare*.—*cujus rei—habebant*. Others translate: "of which part of the service they had a large number."

iisdem—locis: "with the same advantages of position."

magnam partem: acc. of extent of time.

eo facilius: "all the more easily."

vasto—portibus: abl. absolutes: "when the sea was so boundless and open, the waves so great, the harbours so few and far between."

CHAPTER XIII.

Namque closely connects the preceding narative with what follows: "(the Veneti have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters as we) for etc."

hunc: "the following:" the different particulars given afterwards.

armatae: "rigged out:" cp. νῆες ὁπλίζονται: Od. 17, 228.

carinae—navium: scil. *fuerunt*: "their bottoms were considerably more flat than those of our ships."—*carina* originally meant the "shell of a nut:" akin to the Greek κάρυον, "a nut": from root KAR, "hard": cp.

κέρας, ***cornu*** : German ***hart*** : Eng. *hard*. Then it came to signify the hull, bottom, keel of a vessel. So also *φάσηλος*, "a kidney bean," was used for a light boat.

quo—possent : "that they might be able the more easily to take the shallows and the ebb of the tide."—*quo* : when is *quo* used for *ut* ? H. 497. II. 2 ; A. & G. 317, b. Tacitus (Ann. II. 6.) when speaking of the ships used on the coast of the Netherlands says : ***planae carinis, ut sine noxa siderent.***

prorae, scil. ***erant navibus*** : "the ship had prows."

ad quamvis—perferendam : "to withstand any violence and bad usage, however great."—***quamvis*** : literally, "any you please," *i. e.*, no matter how great. —***contumeliam*** : originally means "violence" or "blows." It is generally said of persons.

transtra—crassitudine : scil. ***erant*** : "the cross timbers consisted of beams a foot thick, riveted with iron bolts of the thickness of a man's thumb. ***transtra*** : originally "row benches" ; here said of cross timbers used to support the deck and to give solidity to the vessel.—***pedalibus trabibus*** : abl. of description : H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.—***altitudinem*** here equivalent to ***crassitudinem***.—***digiti pollicis*** in apposition, as ***flumen Rhenus*** because ***pollex*** is used for both thumb and great toe; ***digiti*** is, therefore, added for the sake of clearness.

pro funibus : hemp ropes were liable to be chafed on rough ground and also to be damaged by the alternate wet and dry weather to which they were exposed.

pelles—confectae, scil, ***erant Venetis*** : "(the Veneti had) skins for sails, and hides thinly dressed." The sails of the Romans were made of flax and called ***carbasa*** : the Veneti used skins with the hair on (***pelles***) or hides dressed (***alutae***) with alum (***alumen***).

ejus usus : literally, "the use of it :" ***ejus*** is governed by ***usus***, and refers to ***lini***.—***quod—arbitrabantur*** : "because they thought that so tempestous an ocean and such violent winds could not be very well resisted and that such heavy vessels could not be very well managed by sails."—***tantas tempestates Oceani = tantarum tempestatum Oceanum***, by hypallage. —***tanta onera navium = tam graves naves*** : "so cumbersome vessels," the abstract for the concrete. —***velis*** refers to the canvas sails such as the Romans used. —***abitrabantur*** : why indicative ? H. 516, I.; A. & G. 333.

cum—accommodatiora : "the encounter of our fleet with their vessels was of such a kind that ours had the advantage in speed alone, and in the propulsion of the oars : everything else, considering the character of the coast and the violence of the storms, was more suitable and adapted for them." —***classi*** : H. 387 : A. & G. 231. —***illis = Venetis.***

his : what verbs govern the dative ? H. 385 ; A. & G. 227. —***rostro*** : abl. of means. The ***rostrum*** : the beak or ram of an ancient Roman ship consisted of a strong beam projecting from the prow beneath the water and furnished with sharp points of metal.

neque—adjiciebatur : "nor could a dart easily be thrown so far on account of their height." —***adjiciebatur = adjici poterat.***

et—continebantur**:** "and for the same reason they were less advantageously held by the grappling irons," of the Romans. —*copulis*, otherwise called *manibus ferreis, harpagonibus*, "grappling hooks" by which the Romans caught hold of the enemy's vessels and drew them alongside their own.

accedebat ut—extimescendus**:** "then was added the fact that when the wind began to blow hard and when they were running before the wind, they could both more easily withstand the storm and more safely ride amid the shallows, and when left by the tide they feared not at all the rocks and reefs: the danger from all these things was greatly to be feared by our ships." Distinguish between *accedit ut* with the subjunctive introducing a historical fact, and *accedit quod* with the indicative introducing a clause giving a reason.—*se vento dare*, literally "to give oneself to the wind," *i.e.*, in nautical parlance, to run before the wind. —*facilius—tutius*: note the emphatic position of these adverbs. —*ab aestu*: *aestus* is here personified, hence *ab*: H. 415, I, 2: A. & G. 246.—*relictae*: the ebbing tide left the flat bottomed boats safely on the bottom. —*nihil*: (derived from, either *ne*, old negative = *non*, and *hilum*, a mark, or *ne*, *filum*, a thread) is often used emphatically for *non*: cp. Cic. in Rull. II. 23. *Pompeius beneficio isto legis nihil utitur*: Livy IV. 33: *ea species nihil terruit equos.* So also the Greeks used οὐδέν for an emphatic οὐ; H. 378; A. & G. 240. a. —*saxa* —*cautes*: generally *saxa* (Gk. πέτραι) are large masses of stone of whatever shape: *cautes* are rough, jagged peaks generally under water.—*navibus*: H. 388: A. & G. 232.

CHAPTER XIV.

expugnatis**:** distinguish in meaning *expugno* and *oppugno*.

ubi—sumi**:** "feeling that all this labour was being expended to no purpose." —*laborem sumere*, "to take pains."

frustra**:** distinguish *frustra*, in vain, disappointed expectations, so far as the *subject* is concerned: *nequidquam*, in vain, absence of success, so far as the *result* is concerned: *incassum*, in vain, involving a want of consideration.

captis oppidis**:** "by taking the towns." Notice that often a verbal noun in English is translated by the participle in Latin. Translate: *after the conquest of Gaul*: *from the foundation of Rome.*

his noceri posse**:** H. 384, 5: A. & G. 230.

statuit exspectandam classem**:** "he made up his mind to await the arrival of the fleet." Caesar means all the fleet.

quae—visa est**:** the Veneti seem to have sailed forth from the river Aurray when the approach of the Romans from the Loire was signalled by them. The battle between the fleets probably took place in the Bay of Quiberon and was viewed by Caesar's army from the neighbouring heights of St. Gildas. As the Veneti far surpassed the Romans in number and equipment of vessels, the victory of the Romans was all the more signal. —*primum*, scil. *ubi*.

armorum : "equipment." The word includes not merely arms but also the ship's tackling : so it means the complete equipment of a vessel : cp. Gk. ὅπλα.

neque—vel : it is very unusual to have *neque* or *nec* used once without another *neque* or *nec* following. In place of *vel* we might have *aut* or *ve* which latter is probably the correct reading.

quibus—attributae, "who had taken charge of the several ships."

quid agerent—insisterent : "what they were to do or what plan of fighting they were to adopt." For the mood in *agerent—insisterent* : H. 529 ; A. & G. 334.—*insistere* : properly, "to set one's self to."

rostro : what two cases may this be?

turribus—excitatis : "even though towers were erected," on the Roman ships : the abl. abs. is here equivalent to a concessive clause. Ships so furnished with towers were called *naves turritae*. Note that the regular construction would require *has* to be omitted and *turribus excitatis* changed to *turres excitatas*, as the object of *superabat*. The text, though ungrammatical, is far more forcible than the regular form. We find a parallel to this construction in B. V. 4 : *principibus convocatis hos conciliavit.*

ex—navibus : "on the side of the barbarian vessels."

ut—acciderent : "so that missiles could not very well be thrown into them from a lower standing place, and those discharged by the Gauls descended with greater force." No doubt the weight of the Roman *telum* prevented its being thrown to any great height and the Gauls would, therefore, have a double advantage from the height of the bulwark of their vessels.

una res : no doubt the victors would have lost the victory without this weapon. Caesar purposely avoids mentioning the possibility of a defeat. —*usui* : H. 391, I. ; A. & G. 233.

falces praeacutae : in apposition to *res*. The sharp edged hooks of the Romans fastened to long poles (B. IV. 17), like the *falces murales* employed in pulling down the turf walls of the enemy.

non—falcium : understood *formae* after *absimili* : "of a shape not different from the shape of hooks used in sieges." For case of *forma* : H. 419, II. ; A. & G. 251 , —*formae* : H. 391 ; A. & G. 234. These long hooks reached and cut the enemy's rigging and thus the ships of the enemy, propelled by sails only, would be left unmanageable.

funes—destinabant : "the ropes which made the sail yards fast to the mast." —*antennas* : "the sail yards," called by the Greeks κέρατα. The Romans had no technical word for these ropes. They afterwards adopted the Greek word *ceruchi* (κηροῦχοι).

navigio—praerumpebantur : "they were broken off by getting the ship under way."—*navigio incitato* : abl. abs. Explain fully the tenses in *comprehensi-erant* and *praerumpebantur.*

quibus—abscissis : so far as meaning is concerned it matters little whether *abscissis* (from *abscindo*) or *abscisis* (from *abscido*) is the correct reading.

concidebant : "fell all in a heap."

Gallicis navibus : "on the part of the Gallic ships :" H. 384, 4. 2 ; A. & G. 235. —*armamentis* : same as *arma*, above.

usus navium: "control of the vessels." —*uno*=*eodem*.

reliquum: note the emphatic position: H. 561; A. & G. 344, i.

ut—posset: "so that no act a little braver than usual was able to escape notice:" with *fortius*, scil, *solito*, *i. e.*, no act at all distinguished.

CHAPTER XV.

quum—circumsteterant: "when two or three ships had run round one." It is not to be supposed that the Romans outnumbered the ships of the Veneti. The Romans concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time instead of fighting the enemy in a general engagement. Explain the force of the distributive: H. 174, 2. I.; A. & G. 95, a. The indicative with *quum* shows that the time in two clauses is coincident or nearly so.

transcendere—naves: "tried to board the ships of the enemy."

contendebant: the imperfect here is used of a repeated act: H. 469. II.; A. & G. 277.

quod=*et hoc*, *i. e.*, "such tactics," "such a stratagem."

quum—auxilium: "when no remedy was discovered against this movement:" literally "a remedy for this thing."—*ei rei*=*navium expugnationi*.

ac jam—possent: "and all along the vessels being turned in that direction in which the wind drove them, suddenly so great a stillness and calm ensued that they could not move from their position." Distinguished *jam*, time to the present and including it; *nunc*, the present moment. —*quo*=*in quam partem*. —*subito*: note emphatic position. What would be the usual position? —*malacia*, a pure Greek word μαλακία. It is quite possible that Caesar added *tranquillitas* to express the force of the Greek word. The Gallic ships had no oars.

quidem adds emphasis to the relative: "this circumstance indeed"

negotium: here "engagement." Derive *negotium*.

perpaucae: notice that Caesar prefers *perpauci* to ***paucissimi***.

pervenerint: others read ***pervenirent***. The perfect lays stress on the fact occuring at a given period of time, here expressed by ***noctis interventu***, and means that very few ships reached land then or after. The imperfect would express the fact as a consequence of a preceding proposition.

ab hora—quarta: the Roman day began at six a.m., and lasted to six p.m.; divided into twelve equal parts. The night was generally divided into four watches (*quatuor vigiliae*) extending from six p.m. to six a.m. It is probable that the battle here mentioned was fought about the time of the autumnal equinox; so that *quarta hora* would be about 10 o'clock in the morning.

CHAPTER XVI.

bellum Venetorum: "the war against the Veneti:" note the objective genitive: H. 396, III.; A. & G. 217.

cum—tum: "not only—but also:" H. A. 554. I. 5; A. & G. 155.

[redacted]

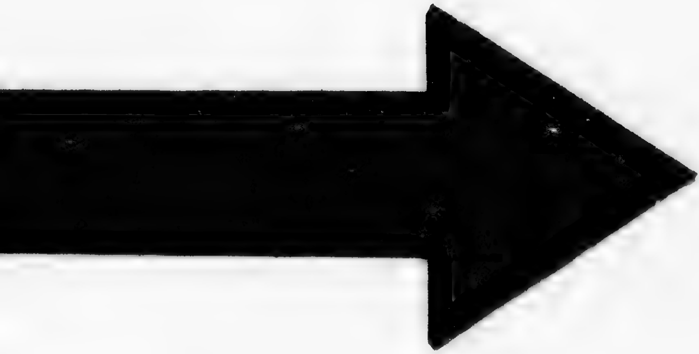


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

6"

gravioris aetatis: "of more advanced age:" gen. of description: H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215.

navium quod ubique fuerat: "all their ships": literally, "whatever of ships had been (to them) every where." —*navium* partitive genitive: H. 396, IV; A. & G. 216, a. 3.

reliqui—habebant: "the rest had nowhere to betake themselves, nor any means of defending their towns." —*quo reciperent = ad quae reciperent*: dependent question: H. 529: A. & G. 334. Others take *habebant = sciebant*: see note Chap. XII. B. III.

in quos—statuit: "on these Caesar thought that he ought to inflict punishment the more severely on this account, in order that the right of ambassadors might be observed more scrupulously in future by the barbarians." —*vindicare in aliquem* is properly "to claim a right against a person," hence "to punish a person." For the reference to *jus legatorum*: see B. III. c. IX.

necato: Caesar's rigour against his enemies is well known.

sub corona: referring to the old custom of selling the captives in war with a *corona* or chaplet on their head.

CHAPTER XVII.

dum—geruntur: H. 467, III. 4; A. & G. 276, e.—*cum iis copiis*: "with these legions:" see chapter XI.

pervenit: either present or perfect; cp. Caes. I. 46, *dum haec geruntur.. nuntiatum est*; V. 22, *dum—geruntur . Cassivelaunus.. mittit.*

his: for dative: H. 386: A. & G. 228.

summam imperii: "the supreme command:" cp. B. I. 41. II. 4, *belli summa*; VI. 11, *summa omnium rerum.*

ex quibus—coegerat: "from among whom he had assembled an army and great forces." Schneider says that *copias* means "men" and not "things" and that the phrase *copias cogi* or *coactas* always refers to "men." Besides Caesar in the next chapter says that no attention was paid to collecting supplies.

his paucis diebus: "within the past few days." Note the use of *his* referring to a time near the present, *i. e.*, after the arrival of Sabinus. For the case: H. 430; A. & G. 256.

Aulerci Eburovices: the *Aulerci* formed four cantons in Gaul. [See proper names.] The *Aulerci Eburovices* were often called *Eburones*, N. W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the *Sequana* (Seine), above *Lutetia* (Paris). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards *Eburovices* (now Evreux.)

auctores belli: "the originators of the war."

nolebant: supply *senatores* from *senatu.*

perditorum—latronum: men were *perditi* who were without means, ruined financially. So Caesar speaks of the followers of Catiline, *cives perditi*: translate "of men of broken fortunes and marauders": probably a class of men who lived a wild, marauding life.

quos—revocabat: "whom the hope of booty and the love of fighting were alluring away from the tillage of the soil and from regular work." The war against the Gauls was now in its third year, so that the primitive life of the people was now being demoralized.

loco: ablative absolute: "his position being in all respects convenient." —*castris* with *tenebat*: H. 425, II. 1, (1); A. & G. 258, f.

duum—spatio: "at the distance of two miles." —*duum millium* scil. *passuum*. —*duum* is an archaic form for *duorum*: so also the archaic genetives *drachmum, nummum, talentum* following numerals. —*spatio*: why ablative? H. 423; A. & G. 257, 6.

hostibus=*hostium*: "in the eyes of the enemy"; H. 384, II. 4, IV. 2; A. & G. 235, a.

nostrorum—carperetur: "in our soldiers' talk was to a certain extent criticised."

vocibus: in the plural *voces* has the meaning often of "abuse," "clamour"; see B. I. 39; III. 24; VI. 36. —*nonnihil*: H. 378. 2; A. & G. 240. a. Distinguish in meaning *nonnihil, nihil non*; *nonnulli, nulli non*; *non nemo, nemo non*; *nonnunquam, nunquam non*; *nonnusquam, nusquam non*.

tantamque—praebuit: "and he conveyed so great an impression of cowardice."

id refers back to *castris se tenebat*.

praesertim—existimabat: "he (Sabinus) thought that he, as a lieutenant-general, ought not to fight especially in the absence of his commander-in-chief." —*teneret*: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

CHAPTER XVIII.

idoneum—delegit: "he picked a man suited to his purpose and adroit." Distinguish in meaning *diligo* and *deligo*.

ex his=*unum ex his*.

quin—edocet: a good example of Caesar sententious style. He says that he only gave orders without telling us what the orders were. We learn, however, from the sequel the orders given.

qui: H. 453; A. & G. 180 f. —*pro perfuga*: "as a deserter." Generally *perfuga* is a deserter, who betrays his party; *transfuga* a waverer, who changes or forsakes his party.

proponit: "pictures," or "represents."

neque—educat: literally, "nor was it further distant so that Sabinus should not lead his troops secretly out of camp on the next night:" *quin*=*qui non*, i. e., *ut non*. Translate: "that Sabinus would not delay longer then the next night in secretly withdrawing his troops out of camp." —*clam*: for *calam*: rt. KAL, "to conceal": cp. *celo*, καλύπτω.

occasionem—esse: "the chance of fighting a successful battle should not be lost." Distinguish in meaning *amitto*, "to lose" through negligence: *perdo*, "to lose," wilfully.

iri oportere: generally impersonal verbs are joined with the inf. pass.,

not act. —*oportet* is said to be connected with *pars, portio*, etc., and originally meant, "it falls to my share": H. 465. 1; A. & G. 146, c.

superiorum dierum Sabini: *dierum* is gen. of description and *Sabini* is subjective genitive: for a combination of the two genitives: cp. B. II. 17: *eorum dierum consuetudinis itineris nostri perspecta.*

spes Venetici belli: "the hopes which they entertained regarding the war with the Veneti": subjective genitive.

quod—credunt: a causal clause in apposition to *res*. Caesar thinks that in most men "the wish is father to the thought."

prius—quam sit concessum: H. 520, I. 2; A. & G. 327.

laeti: H. 443; A. & G. 191.

ut—victoria: "as (they would have done) if victory had been assured." With *ut* scil. *pergerent—explorata victoria*: abl. abs. —*ut = utpote, sicuti, tanquam*: H. 507, III. IV. 7; A. & G. 310. —*sarmentis = sarpmentis*: from *sarpo*, "I prune": properly "prunings". —*virgulta*: properly "green twigs"; cp. *vireo, viridis.—quibus = ut eis*: H. 497; A. & G. 317.

CHAPTER XIX.

imo: "from the foot" of the slope. —*imum*: adjectives are used as nouns: so *in augusto* B. II. 25; *minimum* in the next sentence.

passus: H. 379; A. & G. 257. The Roman *passus* was a double step =5 Roman *pedes*=4 ft. 10¼ in. in English measurement; so that a Roman mile (*mille passus*) was 4,854 ft.=1618 yds. or 142 yds. less than the English mile. —*circiter* is an adverb and *mille passus* goes with *acclivis*, as accusative of extent of space.

magno cursu: "at a full run."

quam minimum spatii: "as little time as possible." —*spatii = temporis*: partitive genitive: H. 397; A. & G. 216.

exanimatique pervenerunt: "and they were out of breath when they arrived." Note the difference of idiom.

Sabinus—dat: "Sabinus cheered on his men and finding them anxious for battle gave the signal at once." —*cupientibus*, scil. *eis*. —*dat*: historical present: H. 467, III. 1; A. & G. 276, d.

impeditis—onera: "while the enemy were encumbered on account of the loads which they carried." —*hostibus*: abl. absolute: H. 431; A. & G. 255. —*ea*: the *sarmenta* and *virgulta*.

duabus portis, scil, *castrorum*: what were names of the gates of a Romam camp?

factum est: "the result was."

opportunitate: abl. of cause: so also *inscientia, defatigatione, virtute, exercitatione.—ferrent*, scil, *hostes*.

ac: "but," literally "and further": cp. use of *et*: Cic. Ros. Amer. 10: *animo non deficiam, et id quod suscepi perferam*: "I will not fail, but I will perform what I have undertaken."

occiderunt: distinguish in meaning *occīderunt, occĭderunt*.

paucos: "only a few."

ut est: "as on the one hand the spirit of the Gauls is quick and ready to undertake wars, so on the other their resolution is too slack and nerveless to bear up against calamity." Caesar often mentions the fickle and irresolute character of the Gauls.

CHAPTER XX.

fere: note the usual position of *fere.*

in Aquitaniam: why is the preposition necessary?

quae pars—aestimanda: "which division, as has been said before, by reason both of its extent and population, is to be considered as a third part of Gaul." Caesar does not mean that Aquitania formed a third of Gaul, but that its extent and population would warrant us in regarding it on an equality with the other two divisions. —*ut—est*: see B. I. chap. I. —*ex—parte*: *ex* has here the same meaning as in *haeres ex asse*, "a sole heir:" and in adverbial phrases as *ex aequo*, "in the way of what is just."

paucis ante annis: express this in other ways. Twenty-two years before this in the war with Sertorius (78-72 B. C.), Hirtuleius, the lieutenant of Sertorius, defeated both Praeconinus and Mallius. Note *ubi = in quibus*: so *unde = e quibus.*

viris fortibus Tolosa: "brave men of Tolosa": so Bell. Civil. I 24. *Cn. Magius Cremona*; III. 71. *notos equites Romanos, C. Fleginatem Placentia, A. Granium Puteolis, M. Sacrativinum Capua.* The ablative may be due to an *ab* omitted.

Galliae Provinciae finitimae: what adjectives govern the dative? H. 391; A. & G. 234.

evocatis: soldiers who had been discharged after serving their time might be again called to service by a special summons of their commander-in-chief. They were then called *evocati*, and were generally exempt from menial duties, or serving as pioneers or sentinels, and they were allowed to use horses on the march.

Sotiates: the name is Keltic, meaning "heroes." It is still retained in town *Sos.*

subito—ostenderunt: "suddenly they unmasked their infantry which they had posted in ambush in a valley closed on all sides." —*convallis*: "a valley" shut in on all sides by heights.

CHAPTER XXI.

superioribus victoriis: the defeat of Praeconinus and Mallius: for case H. 425, II. I. (1); A. & G. 254. b. —*freti*: derived from root seen in *firmus, for-tis, fre-num.* What adjectives govern the ablative?" H. 421. III; A. & G. 25, 4. b.

positam: "depended." —*putarent*: for mood: H. 517; A. & G. 326. So also *cuperent.*

reliquis legionibus: the legions from which the twelve cohorts which formed the force of Crassus were composed.

adolescentulo duce: "when they had *only* a stripling for a leader": abl. absol.: H. 431; A. & G, 255. —*possent*: dependent question: H. 529; A. & G. 336.

vertere: Caesar rarely uses this form of the 3rd pl. perf. act. In Sallust, Livy and Tacitus it often occurs.

ex itinere: literally: "leaving his line of march," "off his line of march," "by single escalade."

cuniculis—actis: "sometimes they ran mines and mantlets against the mound." The word *cuniculus* means properly a rabbit and like many other military terms in use amongst the Romans is derived from the animal kingdom: cp. *scorpio, onagri.*

cujus rei—Aquitani: "a device in which the Aquitani are very skilful indeed." Note the superlative absolute. What adjectives governs the genitive?

aerariae secturae: "copper mines:" properly "copper excavations."

diligentia: "owing to the watchfulness": ablative of cause.

faciunt: scil. *id quod imperatum erat.*

CHAPTER XXII.

in ea re—intentis: "the attention of all our men being occupied in these arrangements." With *intentus* the more usual construction is *in eam rem.*

Adcantuannus: others read *Adiatunnus,* meaning the "one desired," from *adiant,* "desire."

summam imperii: see note, chap. XVII., B. III.

cum sexcentis—dediderint: "along with six hundred faithful followers whom they call *soldurii*: and this is their compact, that in life they enjoy all privileges in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves."—*soldurios*: some say the word is derived from the Basque, or Iberian *saldi,* "a horse," or *salduni,* "a cavalier." Others say that the word is derived from the same root as the German *sollen,* and means *devinctus, obligatus.* According to Athenaeus they died with the king even if he died a natural death. Valerius Maximus mentions this custom: B. II., 6, 11: *Celtiberi nefas esse ducebant proelio superesse, cum is occidisset pro cujus salute spiritum devovissent.* Tacitus mentions a similar custom among the Germans (Germ. 14: cp. VII. 40): *clientes, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos.*

si quid his accidat: a euphemism for *moriantur*: cp. εἴ τι πάθοι = εἰ τι θάνοι.

sibi mortem consciscant: literally: "adjudge death to themselves," "commit suicide."

quisquam: note that *quisquam* and *ullus* are used in negative: *quivis* and *quilibet* in affirmative clauses.

cum his: resuming the sentence interrupted by the parenthesis explaining the meaning of *soldurii*, "with these I say."

eadem—conditione: "the same time": what verbs govern the ablative?

CHAPTER XXIII.

armis—acceptis: express this in various ways.

et natura—munitum: "fortified by both its natural position and art."

paucis—erat: "within a few days after his arrival there."—*paucis diebus*: the ablative marks an interval between two events.—*quibus* is here equivalent to *postquam* and also marks the time within which the event happened: cp. B. IV. 18, *diebus decem quibus materia coepta est comportari*, which is equivalent to *die decimo postquam*, &c.

quoquoversum: "in all directions."

ad—Aquitaniae: "to those states of Hither Spain which adjoin Aquitania:" observe the Latin idiom. Hither Spain (*Hispania Citerior*, subsequently *Taraconensis*) included the district between the Iberus (*Ebro*) and the Pyrenees.

adventu: ablative of time or reason.

omnes annos: during the whole period of the war with Sertorius, 82, B. C.—72, B. C.

hi—instituunt: "these men, in the same way as the Roman people, set about selecting positions, fortifying a camp, cutting our men off from supplies."—*consuetudine*: H. 413; A. & G. 245.—*commeatibus*: H. 413, A. & G. 243.

quod: refers to the preceding sentence and the clause *suas copias.—relinquere* is an equivalent to it.

diduci: "spread out" so as to command the different avenues and prevent them being surrounded by the enemy.

et—relinquere: "and that they still left behind a sufficient number to guard the camp."—*praesidii*: part. gen.: H. 397, IV.; A. & G. 216. a. 3.

minus commode: a mild way (*litotes*) of saying, "with great difficulty."

in dies: daily used with words expressing increase or diminution: *quotidie*, daily, expressing anything daily repeated. Translate: *he goes to school daily*: *he grows stronger daily.*

decertaret: "to fight a decisive battle." Note the force of *de* in *decertare, depugnare.*

consilium: a council of war.

CHAPTER XXIV.

productis—instituta, conjectis: the ablative absolutes are not quite co-ordinate in time. The time in the first would be over before the time in the other two participles.—*duplici acie*: the forces of Crassus were small, and instead of drawing up his soldiers in the usual form (*acies

triplex) he places them in two lines, on the right and on the left, with the auxiliaries thrown into the centre.

quid—caperent: for the partitive genitive: H. 395, IV.; A. & G. 216. For the subjunctive: H. 529; A. & G. 334.

obsessis—potiri: "to blockade the roads, cut off our supplies, and thus win a bloodless victory." The first ablative absolute explains how that happens which is expressed by the other two.

impeditos—cogitabant: "they decided to attack them encumbered on the march, and with their packs to carry, when self-confidence was impaired." Distinguish ***sarcina***, baggage of the individual soldiers: ***impedimenta***, the baggage of the whole army.

castris: often ***in*** is omitted in such cases: cp. B. III. 17: ***Sabinus castris sese tenebat***.

quum—effecissent: "since by their hesitation and by their impression for cowardice which they gave, the enemy had made our soldiers all the more eager for fighting." Another reading is ***timidiores***: the translation then is: "being more timid than their reputation."

exspectari—oportere: impersonal verbs are generally joined with the infinitive ***passive***, not ***active***.

omnibus cupientibus: "and finding them all eager": abl. absolute.

CHAPTER XXV.

quum—complerent: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

multis telis conjectis: "by a shower of darts."—***vallo***: H. 414, I; A. & G. 243.

quibus—confidebat: "on whom Crassus had little confidence so far as fighting was concerned."—***quibus***: H. 425, II. I., (I) IV.; A. & G. 254, b.

ad aggerem: scil. ***faciendum***: "to form a rampart": the Romans in consequence of the height of the enemy's camp had to make a sloping mound up to it, like the ***agger*** made in sieges.

speciem—pugnantium: "the appearance and impression of combatants."

cespitibus: "turfs," "sods."

constanter ac non timide: "with steadiness and even intrepidity."

non eadem diligentia munita: "that the camp had not been formed with the same care on the side of the decuman gate." As the Romans invariably protected the camp with a rampart and ditch: ***munire castra*** often means "to form a camp." Where was the ***porta decumana***?

CHAPTER XXVI.

praemiis pollicitationibusque: it is more than likely that no rewards would be given in the heat of battle: so we may take the expression to mean: "by the promise of reward."

vellet: dependent question; H. 529; A. & G. 334.

praesidio castris: H. 390, II. IV. I. (2.); A. & G. 233.

intritae; "not worn out": a participle negatived: cp. *indefessus, illaesus, invocatus.*

omnium, scil. *hostium.*

videri: scil, *possent* from the *posset* following. Note that *priusquam videri posset* means "before they could see," without implying that they ever saw: while *priusquam videri potuit*, means "before they could see," implying they saw: H. 520, II; A. & G. 327.

quid rei gereretur: "what was going on:" H. 529; A. & G. 334.

quod: refers to the thought in *redintegratis viribus*, *i. e.* the renewal of strength.

consuevit: "generally happens": see note B. III. chapter I.

desperatis—rebus: see note on B. III. chapter III.

per munitiones: "all along the entrenchments": cp. IV. 33, *per temonem percurrere.*

apertissimis campis: Crassus was probably in the low lying lands south of the Garonne, within the Department of Gironde.

multa nocte: "far on in the night": cp. B. I. 22: *multo die.*

CHAPTER XXVII.

hac audita pugna: express this in different ways.

ultro: literally, *to* a point beyond: *ultra*: *at* a point beyond. The word may be translated by "further."

Tarbelli—Cocosates: for the position of their tribes see the map. Many of these names still survive in their modern names: Tarbelli in *Tarbes*, the Bigerriones in *Bigorre*, the Elusates in *Eauze*, the Ausci in *Auch*, the Garumni in *Garonne*, the Sibuzates in *Saubusse.*

paucae ultimae nationes: "a few tribes, the remotest."

tempore: H. 425, II. I, I IV.; H. & G. 254. b.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

jam: "by this time."

omni Gallia pacata: "amid the general reduction of Gaul": H. 431; A. & G. 255.

Morini—essent: "the only people under arms were the Morini and Menapii," : H. 503, I.; H. &. G. 320. a.

neque=et non.

longe—ac: "in a way far different from": H. 459, 2; 554, I, 2 IV.; A. & G. 156, a.

eo=in eos silvas et paludes.

initium: "entrance."

repulerunt: the forms *reppuli, relligio, repperit* may be accounted from the fact that *red* may be the prefix and the principle if assimilation was observed.

deperdo : note that *perdo* and its compound denote wilful negligence in losing : *amitto* implies to lose from indifference.

deinceps : a word compounded of *dein* (*de-in-de*) and the suffix *-ceps*. It signifies an uninterrupted series. The meaning then is, "during all the days that Caesar spent in the country."

imprudentibus : "off their guard," because engaged in cutting timber, &c. It would be more common to find *in milites.*—*militibus*: abl. abs.

omnem—collocabat : "he collected together all that timber, which was cut down, directly facing the enemy, and he piled it as a rampart on each flank." Notice the force of the imperfect.

magno spatio—confecto : "a large space having been cleared."—*paucis diebus* : abl. within a point of time.

extrema impedimenta—nostros : "the rear of the baggage train was coming within reach of our men." Distinguish *pecus, pecŏris* : "a collection of cattle," and *pecus, pecŭdis*, "a single head" of cattle. Explain the subjunctives *tenerentur—peterent.*—*densiores silvas* = *densiores partes silvae.*

ejusmodi tempestates ; literally, "storms of such kind," *i. e.*, "such storms," or "such tempestuous weather."—*consecutae* scil. *sunt.* —*sub pellibus* : literally, "under skins," *i. e.*, as we say, "under cover." The tents under which the Roman soldiers slept in summer were covered with skins. In winter, generally, Caesar went into *hiberna*, either in the towns of Gallia or under huts built for the winter.

Aulercis : the Aulerci Eburovices are meant [see Proper Names].

in hibernis collocavit : this includes the forces under Sabinus and Crassus.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

ea—consulibus: "in the following winter belonging to the year in which Cneius Pompey and Marcus Crassus were consuls." The Latin is loosely expressed. We should expect *hieme ejus anni qui fuit annus.* The Romans marked their years by the names of the *consuls* as the Athenians did by the name of the *chief archons.* Each book of Caesar is supposed to record the events of one year: B. I., the events of the Helvetian war of 58 B. C.; B. II., of the Belgic war of 57 B. C.; B. III., of the Venetic war of 56 B. C.: B. IV., of the war against the Germans and of the first expedition to Britain, 55 B. C.—*Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus*: abl. absol.—Note the absence of the connective.

Usipetes Germani et Tenchteri: we often find the generic with the specific name: cp. *Aedui Ambarri*: B. I., c. XI. According to Tacitus there were three great divisions of the Germans: the *Ingaevones*, on the coast of the German ocean: the *Hermiones*, in the central and eastern parts of Germany: the *Istaevones* on the southern parts of the Rhine. The two tribes mentioned here occupied the north bank of the *Lippe*, about fifty miles below Cologne.

a mari: "from (that part of) the ocean."—*quo = in quod.*

quod: "the fact that," explaining *causa*: in this sense *quod* takes the indicative.

Suevis: others have *Suebis*, a name still preserved in "Suabians." In its narrowest sense the word denotes the *Sem[illegible]* who dwelt between the Elba and the Oder: but in its widest sense it was equivalent to *Hermiones*, and included all the tribes in eastern and central Germany, from the upper Rhine to the Vistula and Baltic.

premebantur: "had been hard pressed": note the force of the imperfect.

Suevorum gens: according to Mommsen, the correct orthography is *Suebi*, and the word is etymologically connected with *sweifen*, "the rangers," or "nomads": a likely derivation considering the description given here and also in Tacitus (Germ. 38)

pagos: properly country districts of enclosed or cultivated land round a fortified place. Such is the meaning of *pagus* applied to Italy. Outside of Italy the word had a wider meaning. With the root PAG: cp. *πήγνυμι* "to fix": cp. *pango*: so, δῆμος, "a township": (from δέω, "to bind"): English *town*: A. S. *tun* from *tynan*, "to enclose." The word still exists in the French *pays*: cp. *Pays de Vaud.*

ex quibus—educunt: "from *each* of which yearly they lead out from

their territories a thousand armed men." Note the force of the distributive: H. 174, 2, (1.); A. & G. 95, a. This would make the force of the Suevi 100,000 men.—*quotannis*; written thus or *quot annis*: abl. of point of time. In full it would be *tot annis quot sunt*: cp. *quot mensibus*, "monthly."

qui domi manserunt: "who (each year) have remained at home": explain the case of *domi*: H. 426, 1; A. & G. 258, d. Others read *manserint*: in that case *qui*=*quippe qui*, giving a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as they have remained at home": H. 517; A. & G. 320, e.

rursus: often used to express contrast or correspondence between two classes (*re, versus*) as in V. 44; VII. 47; 51.

in vicem: "in turn"; literally, "for a turn": *in* often signifies distribution: cp. *in capita*, "a head"; *in modium*, "a peck."

anno post: abl. of measure, "by a year later"=*anno postero.*

ratio atque usus: literally, "the system and further the practice" or "systematic practice": *ratio*: "the principle," "the science" of a thing: *usus*, "the practice": these words are often combined.

privati ac separati: the *ager privatus* is "land belonging to the individual" opposed to the *ager publicus* or "land belonging to the state" as a whole: *ager separatus* is "land marked out by boundaries."

longius anno: probably (1) to prevent the ground getting exhausted by a longer occupation and (2) to prevent the people becoming too much attached to the soil.

frumento—vivunt: *vivo*, like *vescor*, takes the ablative.—*maximam partem*: "mainly": acc. closer definition or specification: H. 378; A. & G. 240, c.

multumque—venationibus: "and they are greatly addicted to hunting expeditions": cp. B. VI. 21.

quae res: "and this fact."

genere—exercitatione—libertate: causal ablatives.

a pueris: "from boyhood": cp. Gk ἐκ παίδων.

nullo—adsuefacti: "as they are trained by no service or schooling": abl. of instrument: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

quod—faciant: "because as they say": what would *faciunt* mean? H. 516, I, II; A. & G. 321, a.

immani—magnitudine: abl. of description: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251. *eam*=*talem.*

locis frigidissimis: *in* is omitted, "in the coldest climate": cp. *loca temperatiora*; B. V. 12. Caesar was thinking of the mild winters in Italy.

vestitus: partitive genitive after *quidquam.*

laventur=*se lavent*: H. 465; A. & G. 111, b. N. 1.

CHAPTER II.

mercatoribus—habeant: the construction is: *mercatoribus est aditus ad eos* (*i. e., Germanos*) *magis eo* (*consilio*) *ut habeant* (*eos*) *quibus vendant* (*ea*)

quae bella ceperint: "merchants are allowed to go into their country more with the design that they (the Germans) may have persons to whom they may sell the booty which they take in war."—*eo*: abl. of instrument explained by the clause *ut—habeant.*—*ceperint*: subjunctive because *quae* denotes an indefinite class=*talia ut*, "such things as," and expresses a consequence. Note the perfect tense as the action expressed in *ceperint* must precede that expressed in *vendant.* This distinction is not observed in English.—*quibus vendant=ut eis vendant*; a purpose is expressed and hence the subjunctive.

desiderent: "require": H. 516, II. 2; A. & G. 341, 6.

quin etiam: "nay even": "moreover." Properly *quin=qui ne?* "how not?", introducing something startling.

jumentis: perhaps only horses are meant, though the word may be applied to any animal "yoked": for *jugmentum*, from *jugum*, "a yoke."

impenso pretio: "at an extravagant price": ablative of value: H. 422; A. & G. 252.

prava atque deformia: "ill-shaped and unsightly."

summi—laboris: "that they are capable of enduring the greatest fatigue": H. 402; A. & G. 214, c.

eodem vestigio: "in the same spot": the abl. with *in* omitted as in *equestribus proeliis.*

quum usus est: "when it is necessary." The indicative with *quum* is used when the contemporaneous time is expressed in principal and subordinate clauses.

eorum moribus: "according to their customs": causal ablative: H. 413; A. & G. 245.

inertius: "more indolent": or "more unskilful" (*in, ars*).

ephipiis: cp. ἐφίππια: "trappings of a horse."

quamvis pauci (*sint*): "however few they may be": distinguish in use *quamvis* and *quamquam.*

omnino: "at all": cp. II. 15, where a similar remark is made of the Nervii.

CHAPTER III.

publice—agros: "they consider it their special glory as a nation that the lands on their borders should lie unoccupied to the widest extent."—*publice*, "as a nation" opposed to *privatim*, "as an individual."—*quam*: note the emphasis that *quam* gives to superlatives.—*a suis finibus*: "starting from the territories," *i.e.*, "on the side of their territories."

hac-posse: "by this (they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of *significari* is the clause *magnum—posse.*

una ex parte a Suevis: literally, "on one side in the direction of the Suevi," *i.e.*, "on one side of the Suevian land."—*agri*: partitive genitive: H. 396, IV.: A. & G. 216.

succedunt: "come close up."

Ubii: in Caesar's time the Ubii were east of the Rhine. In the reign of Augustus the Ubii removed to the west of the Rhine, and had as their chief town *Colonia Agrippinensis* (now Cologne).

ut—Germanorum: "according to German ideas": literally, "as is the comprehension of the Germans." *Captus* means "capacity," "nature," and the passage here means "a state wealthy and flourishing, for a German state."

humaniores: "more civilized": so speaking of the inhabitants of Kent, Caesar says, (V. 14) *longe sunt humanissimi.*

ventitant: how are frequentative verbs formed?

moribus: instrumental abl: see note Chapter I. Caesar, B. VI. cc. 11-24, compares the customs of the Gauls and the Germans.

experti: concessive: "though they had tried often by frequent wars."

gravitatem: "importance."

multo: abl. of measure, used adverbially. The difference between *multum* and *multo* as adverbs is this, that the former is used with verbs and the latter with comparative adjs. and adverbs. Translate: "reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength."

CHAPTER IV.

in eadem causa: "in the same condition."

supra: in Chapter I., B. IV.

complures annos: acc. of continuance of time: H. 379; A. & G. 256.

ad extremum: "at last," "finally."

quas regiones: referring to the general idea contained in *ad Rhenum.* The country where they had settled was that opposite to Cleves and Nymegen.

dispositis praesidiis: "garrisons having been placed at different parts." Note the force of *dis-* in *dispositis.*

transire prohibebant: Caesar uses with *prohibeo*: (1) an infinitive as here, and not *ne, quin, quominus* with subjunctive: (2) sometimes an ablative alone, (3) or an ablative with *a* or *ab.*

omnia experti: "after trying every expedient."

custodias: "sentries."

reverti se: note that the forms of *revertor* from the present are passive in form and from the perf. are active. The position of *se* after *reverti* instead of before it is to bring it close to *in suas*: H. 563; A. & G. 344, g. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor.*—*tridui viam progressi*: "advancing a three day's march."—*tridui = trium dierum*: H. 396, V. N. 1; A. & G. 215, b.—*viam*: H. 371, II. N.; A. & G. 238.

omni—confecto: "all the distance being covered in one night by the cavalry."—*equitatu*: either the abl. of instrument or abl. of accompaniment with *cum* omitted.

priusquam—certior fieret: note that *priusquam* and *antequam* take the subjunctive when the idea of purpose is involved as here: H. 520, II.; A. & G. 327.

eorum: i.e., of the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine.—*partem*: acc. of time.

eorum copiis: "with their resources": ablative of instrument or means by which they live.

CHAPTER V.

infirmitatem "the unstable character:" see notes on chapters VIII. and X., B. III.

nihil his committendum: scil, *esse*: "that no confidence ought to be placed in them." —*nihil*=emphatic *non*: see note B. III. chapter XIII.: H. 378, 2; A. & G. 240, a.

est—consuetudinis: "now this is a characteristic of the custom of the Gauls:" H. 402, 403; A. & G. 214, c.

invitos: "against their will."

cogant—quaerant—circumstat cogant: explanatory of *hoc*: H. 501, III.. A. & G. 332, f.

audierit—cognoverit subjunctive of dependent question: H. 529: A. & G. 334.

mercatores: explain this accusative H 372; A. & G. 237, I. Decline *vulgus*. What nouns of the second declension are irregular in gender?

rebus · "facts" opposed to *auditionibus*: "hearsays."

de summis rebus: "on most important matters."

quorum—est: "of which they are often of necessity compelled to repent immediately after:" —*quorum*: H. 409, III; A. & G. 221, b. Literally: "of which that they repent is necessary". —*in vestigio*: see note chapter II.; B. III.

et—respondeant: "and in most cases the answers are invented to suit their wishes." —*plerique*, scil, *viatores*: "most of the travellers" Distinguish in meaning between *plerique*: "most," "the majority," and *plurimi*, "very many," but not necessarily the majority.

CHAPTER VI.

qua—cognita: note the introduction of the chapter by a relative showing a connection with the preceeding narrative: "now as he knew this custom."

ne—occurreret: "to avoid engaging in too serious a war." Caesar was afraid that he might have to fight the Galli and Germani together. The tense in *occurreret* shows that *proficiscitur* is a historical present: H. 495, II. A. & G. 287, e.

ad exercitum: Caesar probably joined his army in Normandy near Lisieux: B. III. chapter XXIX.

consuerat: see note on chapter I. B. III.

facta: scil, *esse*: so below with *missas, invitatos, dissimulanda.*

uti—discederent: a noun clause: H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, a. —*uti*=*ut*. That is, to go from the Rhine into the interior of Gaul to help the inhabitants to throw off the yoke of the Romans.

postulassent=*postulavissent*: dependent clause in *oblique* narrative and hence the subjunctive H. 524; A. & G. 336.

fore parata: the past. part. pass. and *fore* has the force of a future perfect: "will have been got ready."

qua spe adducti: "and so led on by their hopes."—*qua*=*itaque ea*. Note that *spes* is always singular in Caesar.

Eburonum—Condrusorum: the Germans had crossed the Lower Rhine and were now in the valley of the Meuse by way of Maestricht. [See Map].

clientes: "dependants": from root CLU, "to hear," hence "to obey."

quae cognoverat: the subjunctive might have been used if *quae* were an interrogative. It is, however, a relative and the expression is only adjectival to *ea* and so without any influence on the construction.—The meeting of the chieftians probably took place at Amiens.

imperato: "levied."

CHAPTER VII.

comparata; "having been procured": so also *parata* in the same sense.

quibus in locis: Caesar often repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause: cp. B. I., c. VI.: *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.*

paucorum dierum iter: for *dierum* H. 396, V: A. & G. 215.—*iter*: H. 379; A. & G. 257.

haec: "as follows": referring to what comes after: see note B. III. Chapter VII.

neque priores inferre: "were neither the first to make war on." Note the difference between *priores* and *primos*, the first implying two people, the latter more than two.

inferre, recusare, lacessantur: note the present tense for the sake of vividness in *oratio obliqua.*

quin—contendant: explain fully the use of *quin*: H. 501, II. 2; A. & G. 319, d.

quicumque: the antecedent is *eis*, understood after *resistere*.

deprecari: properly "to beg off" war.

haec tamen dicere, scil. *legati confirmaverunt Germanos*, "the ambassadors declared the Germans said these things."

domo: explain fully this case: H. 428, 2; A. & G. 258, a. —Decline *domus*.

attribuant—partiantur: what mood would this be in direct narration? H. 523, II.; A. & G. 339.

non : the position shows it limits *superare* : "whom they fail to conquer."

CHAPTER VIII

ad : "in reply to." —*visum est* impersonally : scil, *respondere* : "it seems good to reply." Note that *videtur* and *videbatur* are never so used by Caesar.

sibi—posse : "it was not possible for any friendship to exist between him and them." —*sibi* : H. 387 ; A. & G. 231.

verum : "a fair thing" : here = *par* : cp. Hor. Epist. I. 7. 98 : *metiri se quemque suo modulo ac pede verum est.*

qui—potuerint : why subjunctive : H. 517 ; A. & G. 320, e.—*alienos occupare* is the subject of *esse* and *non verum* the predicate. The order in Latin and in English is often inverted. Distinguish in meaning : *alius, alter, alienus.*

praesertim : often introduces a fresh reason : cp. καὶ ταῦτα in Greek. Translate : "which can be given rightly and that too, to so large a horde."

licere : scil, *eis.*

in Ubiorum finibus : on the Rhine opposite to Cologne.

apud se : distinguish the meaning of this from that of *secum.*

hoc—imperaturum : scil, *dixit* : "he said that he would command the Ubii to do this." Caesar could do so as he held in his power hostages of the Ubii. Note that *impero* takes a dat. of the person in the sense of "command," but dat. of person and acc. of thing in the sense of "demand" or "levy."

CHAPTER IX.

re deliberata = *quum res deliberata esset* : "after the matter had been duly considered." What is the derivation of *delibero* ?

post diem tertium : the next day but one, as the Romans in cases such as this reckoned in the day with which given period began and ended instead of taking the first only as we do.

propius se : "nearer them." What constructions may *proprius* have ?

ne—quidem : here "not either," *i.e.* : no more than their demands mentioned in Chapter VII : cp. οὐδέ.

aliquot diebus ante : the ablative is regarded as the ablative of difference with *ante* and *post.*

Ambivaritos : these were Belgians on the west of the Meuse, and since the defeat of the Belgae, under the Roman sway.

interponi : "was introduced" : *interponere* often means to throw an obstacle in the way : cp. *hoc decreto interposito* : "this decree having put an end to the discussion" : B. VII. 33. With *fidem* it is twice used "to pledge one's word" : B. V. Chapters VI., XXXVI.

CHAPTER X.

Vosego : the modern Vosges near the northeast frontier of France. The Meuse really rises in the plateau of Langres, the cradle of the French rivers. Vosegus is the Latinised form of the Gallic word *fasach*, "a mountain waste," like the German *Wald*.

parte : "tributary." Caesar here means that the *Meuse* (Mosa) after receiving the *Waal* (Vahalis) flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the ocean and forms the island of the Batavians. This implies that the Meuse does not directly flow into the German Ocean. At present, however, it does. If Caesar's account be correct the plain inference is that the geography of the country must have changed. We know that Caesar, however, was often mistaken on points of geography because these were often received on second hand and untrustworthy information.

Batavorum : the word *Batavi* still exists in the form *Betuwe*, a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine, and meaning 'good meadow." Their capital was *Lugdunum* (now Leyden), and not to be confounded with *Lugdunum* in Gaul (now Lyons).

Rhenus : this word is derived from root SRU : "to rush" or "flow" : so *Rhodanus* : *Roma* (= *srouma*, "the stream town") : *ῥέω*, *ῥεῦμα*.—*ex Leopontiis* : "from out of the country of the Leopontii," *i.e.* "in the country of the Leopontii." This name is still preserved in the modern Val Leventina on the upper course of the *Ticino* (Ticinus).

longo spatio "after a long distance" : abl. abs.

citatus fertur : "flows swiftly" : H. 443 ; A. & G. 191.

sunt qui ; literally, "there are those who : "some." Here = *aliqui*.

piscibus—ovis—vivere : see note Chapter I., B IV.

capitibus : here *caput* means the "mouth" of a river. Other writers use it in the sense of the 'source" : cp. Hor. Od. B. I. i. 23 : *ad aquae lene caput sacrae*.

CHAPTER XI.

passuum duodecem millibus : abl. after the comparative with *quam* omitted. The ablative is not, however, governed by the comparative, but is the ablative of extent since *amplius* has no influence on the construction : cp. *amplius octingentos* next chapter : so we find it with the nom. B. VII. chap. XV. : *amplius viginti urbes incenduntur* : or with genitive, B. I. chap. XXXVIII. *quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum*.

ut erat constitutum : that the envoys should return the next day but one.

congressi, scil, *cum eo* : "meeting with him."

antecessissent : "to head the line of march :" H. 529, II. ; A. & G. 342. Explain fully the order of the line of march of a Roman army.

praemitteret scil, *quosdam* : the object is omitted as in English.

sibique—mittendi : "and that he would give them an opportunity of sending ambassadors among the Ubii" : observe the construction of *potest-*

am facere with dat. of person and gen. of *gerund.*—*sibi, i.e., Germanis,* not simply *legatis.*

senatus : "council". Caesar here speaks of the deliberative assembly of his enemies as if they were Romans.

sibique—fecisset : "pledged their word of honour to them on oath." Note the pluperfect time as representing the prior of two actions.—*jurejurando* : literally, "with," or "by an oath."

ea conditione—se usuros, scil. *esse* : "that they would accept the terms of agreement." What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421, I. II ; A. & G. 249.

daret : subjunctive of oblique command : *da*, in direct narrative.

eodem illo pertinere : "tended to that same end," "pointed in the same direction."

ut—reverterentur : explains *eodem illo.*

abessent : subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *reverterentur.*

convenirent : subjunctive of command in *oratio obliqua* : *convenite*, of *oratio recta.*

qui nuntiarent=(*eos*) *ut ei* : "men to bear the order" : H. 497, I. ; A. & G. 317. Here *nuntiarent*=*mandatum perferrent.* Note that *mittit* is a historic present as shown by the tense in *nuntiarent.*

sustinerent : "hold their ground" : not often is *sustinere* used without an object.

quoad—accessisset : the mood is doubly necessary : (1) from the clause being a dependent one in *oratio obliqua* : (2) because the final notion of expectation is involved : H. 519, II. 2 : A. & G. 328.

CHAPTER XII.

at : often introduces a change of subject.

ubi—conspexerunt : "as soon as they caught sight of our cavalry" : with *ubi primum* : cp. *quum primum.* —*ubi* meaning "when" takes the perfect indicative except in B. II. c. 9, *ubi faciunt* ; B. IV. 26, *ubi conspexerant.*

cum—haberent : "though they themselves had not more than eight hundred :" for subjunctive : H. 515. III. ; A. & G. 326. —*octingentos* ; see note on *passuum duodecim milibus* : B. IV. chapter XI.

nihil—nostris : "while our men had no apprehension". —*nihil* may be taken as the object of *timentibus* or as an emphatic *non* : as in B. III. 13.

induciis : dative of purpose : H. 390.

rursus resistentibus : scil. *nostris.*

consuetudine sua : "according to their custom" : abl. of manner, often *ex* is expressed : B. IV. chapter XXXII.

subfossis—dejectis : these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time : "the horses being stabbed from beneath and, in consequence, many of our men being thrown from their horses." —*dejectis*, scil, *de equis.*

ut non—venissent: "that they did not cease from flight until they came into sight of our army." —*fuga*: H. 414; A. & G. 243. —*venissent*: for the subjunctive: H. 520, 2; A. & G. 327.

interficiuntur: historical present: H. 467, I.; A. & G. 276, d.: cp. B. V. chapter XV.

Piso Aquitanus: the Aquitanian obtained probably his Roman name when the rights of a Roman citizen were conferred upon him: cp. B. I. 47.

genere: abl. of origin: H. 415, II.; A. & G. 244, a.: so also after *editus, genitus, ortus, oriundus, satus.*

amicus: a distinction given for extraordinary services as in the case of the Sequanian Catamantaloedes (B. I. 3); of Ariovistus (B. I. 35).

equo vulnerato: abl. absolute expressing both time and cause.

cecĭdisset: distinguish this in meaning from *cecīdisset.*

id: "this mishap."

CHAPTER XIII.

hoc—proelio: express this in other ways.

jam: joined to a negative as here: "no longer." —*sibi*: H. 388; A. & G. 232.

ab iis qui: "from such men as": hence the subjunctive of result in *intulissent*: H. 500; A. & G. 320. For what other reason may this be subjunctive? H. 524; A. & G. 336.

per dolum atque insidias: "by the employment of craft and treachery:" join these words with *intulissent*. These expressions are nearly equivalent to adverbs: cp. *per summum dedecus*: "most disgracefully:" *de improviso*, "suddenly:" *de integro*, "afresh."

petita pace: see note on *equo vulnerato*: B. IV., chap. XII.

exspectare: object of *judicabat* and the subject of *esse.*

dum—reverteretur: "until the forces of the enemy should be increased and their cavalry return:" for the subjunctive: H. 579, II.; A. & G. 328. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor*; *cresco* and *augeo.*

summae dementiae esse: "was the height of madness:" H. 401; A. & G. 214, d; predicate genitive after *esse.*

cognita infirmitate: ablative absolute expressing a cause; "owing to," or "from his knowledge of the fickleness."

quantum—auctoritatis: "what prestige": for partitive genitive: H. 396, IV.; A. & G. 216, 3.

nihil spatii=*nihil temporis*: H. 396, IV.; A. & G. 216, 3.

ne—praetermitteret: explanatory of *consilio*: "not to let pass any battle day" *i.e.*, a favorable chance for bringing on a battle.—*pugnae* may be either (1) a genitive, like *tempus committendi proelii*, or (2) a dative of purpose.

postridie ejus diei: literally, "on the day after that day": H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, g.

perfidia : what is the force of *per* in *perfidus, perjuro?* It was likely that Caesar charges the Germans with a breach of faith to justify his own indefensible conduct.

majoribus natu : give the positive and superlative of this expression.

simul—simul=et—et : "both . . and."

sui : H. 542, I., N., I. ; A. & G. 298, a.

contra—dictum : "contrary to what had been arranged." The subjunctive is owing to the virtual *oratio obliqua*. We might have expected *contra id quod esset dictum*. It is rare that *contra* is used with *atque* though we often find *aliter ac* : B. II. c. XIX.

si quid possent : "whatever they could :" H. 378, 2 ; A. & G. 240, a.

ut—impetrarent : "that they might gain their object as to the truce by playing false." What words are used only in the plural?

quos : H. 453 ; A. & G. 180 f.—*oblatos*, scil *esse*.—*gavisus* : what verbs are semi-deponent?—*illos* : pleonastic as expressed in *quos*.

CHAPTER XIV.

acie—instituta : express in other ways.

milium, scil, *passuum*, an omission probably for the case of euphony, and only in case of gen. pl. : B. I. 41 ; II. 17 ; V. 13.

prius—quam—possent : H. 520, II. ; A. & G. 327.

quid—ageretur : dependent question ; H. 529 ; A. & G. 334.

omnibus rebus : "by the whole state of affairs"

discessu suorum, scil, *principum* : "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."

perturbantur=dubitant, or in *perturbantur* we have a pregnant construction for *perturbantur dubitatione*, "are distracted with doubt." Note the historical present as shown by *praestaret*.

—ne—an—an : in triple disjunctive questions Caesar also uses *utrum, —ne, an* ; *utrum, an, an* ; and—*ne, an* with the first conjunctive omitted.

pristini diei : a descriptive genitive : H. 396, V. ; A. & G. 215.

quo loco=quo in loco i. e., *in castris* : the preposition *in* is often omitted with *locus* : cp. *alieno loco* (B. I. c. 15), *iniquo loco* (B. II. 33), *idoneo loco* (B. III. 17).

puerorum mulierumque : "consisting of children and women." Caesar's action in thus cancelling the truce and butchering defenceless women and children was so severely censured at Rome that Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Tenctheri : (Plut. Caesar 22).

CHAPTER XV.

post tergum : "behind them" : cp. *a tergo* : "from behind," "in the rear."

Mosae et Rheni : Schneider supposes the place here to be below the *Batavorum insula*, and eighty miles from the sea (chapter X). Kraner

says that the spot was at the junction of the Maas and Waal: Herzog, at Thiel, where the Waal turns to the Maas. Another reading for *Mosae* is *Mosulae*. At the confluence of the Rhine and Mosel was the Roman colony of *Confluentes* (now Coblenz).

reliqua fuga desperata : "despairing of further flight": for construction of *despero* : see note on *desperata salute* : B. III. chapter III.

ad unum : "to a man."

ex tanti belli timore : "after the dread of so great a war:" or "freed from the dread of so great a war": join these words closely to *se receperunt.* Others take the preposition *ex* as here a substitute for the concessive abl. absolute: (see note on *ex loco superiore*, B. III., chapter IV.,) and translate: "great though the apprehension of so important a war had been."

millium : genitive of description: H. 396, v.; A. & G. 215.

iis—fecit : it is a very strong proof that Caesar did not believe the senate guilty of the charges against them when he spared them. He put to death the senators of the Veneti (B. III. chapter 16) whom he did think guilty, though he admitted that they acted on compulsion.

apud eum : "in his camp": literally "near him."

libertatem, scil, ***remanendi apud eum*** : "leave to remain in his camp."

CHAPTER XVI.

Germanico : equivalent to an objective genitive: "against the Germans."

justissima : "the best grounded." —*quod* : explains *illa* : "namely that."

suis—voluit : "he wished that they should have fears for the safety of their own possessions as well:" for the dative *rebus* : H. 385, II., I; A. & G. 227, c.

accessit—quod : "there was also the fact that": see note on chapter II., B. III.

supra : see B. IV., chapter IX.

qui postularent=ut ei postularent : H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317.

intulissent : subjunctive after the virtual *oblique* narrative implied in *postularent.*

dederent : *ut* is omitted after verbs of demand or command: H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, f. R.

non-aequum=iniquum : "an unfair thing": *aequum* agrees with the clause *Germanos transire.*

sui imperii—potestatis : H. 402; A. & G. 214, c.

postularet : what would this be in direct discourse? H. 486, II; A. & G. 268.

quod—premerentur : the subjunctive of *oblique* narrative introduced by *orabant.*

si—prohiberetur : "if he were hindered from doing this by being engrossed by state business."

occupatio: does not mean business itself, as in English "occupation," but the engrossing power of business.—*transportaret*: see note *dederent* above.

id—futurum: "this would be sufficient for (present) aid and grounds of hope for the future."—*ad*: 'as regards,' 'for.'—*reliqui temporis*: descriptive genitive.

pulso—facto: "by the defeat of Ariovistus, and the occurrence of that very recent battle." Note the Latin idiom. The English noun is contained in the Latin participle. For the connection between Ariovistus and the Suevi, see B. I. 58; V. 29, 55; VI. 12.

opinione—tuti: "rendered safe by the prestige and friendship": abl. of means or instrument.

CHAPTER XVII.

navibus: instrumental ablative.

satis tutum: when in an enemy's country Caesar was always very careful to keep the district behind him well secured.

suae dignitatis esse: "to be conformable to his own dignity": H. 401; A. & G. 214, ol.

etsi—proponebatur: "though the very great difficulty of making a bridge was presented to him," *i.e.*, was evident. For this force of *proponere*, see B. I. chap. 17, 20; III. 18.

id sibi contendendum, scil, *esse*: "that he ought to strive to effect it." —*sibi*: H. 288; A. & G. 232.

rationem—instituit: "the plan of the bridge he adopted was as follows." It is generally supposed that Caesar crossed the Rhine near Bonn, where the river is from 14 to 16 feet in depth and 1500 to 1600 feet wide.

tigna—jungebat: "he joined together in pairs piles, at a distance of two feet from one another, each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened a little at the bottom and proportioned in their length to the depth of the river."—*bina*: what are the uses of distributives?—*sesquipedalia*: give the derivation of this word.—*ab imo praeacuta*: literally, "sharpened from the lower end."—*jungebat*: "he joined in successive pairs:" hence the imperfect.

haec—statuebat: "when he had sunk these in the river, and had fastened them by means of rafts, and had driven them home by rammers, not like a pile perfectly upright, but leaning forward and slanting, so that they should incline according to the direction of the current, in like manner opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet, at a point lower down, he placed other pairs, joined in the same manner and slanted against the force and current of the river."—*defixerat*: the pluperfect denotes repeated action: H. 473, 2; A. & G. 280.—*sublicae modo*: because a pile is perpendicular, but these beams slanted a little.—*fastigate*: sloping like the gable ends (*fastigium*) of a house.—*quadragenum* = *quadragenorum*: H. 52, 3; A. & G. 40, c. Note the force of the distributive, forty feet in each case, with each pair of beams (*tigna*): H. 174; A. & G. 95, a.

haec—distinebantur : "each pair of these piles besides was kept asunder, after beams had been let in between them two feet thick—the distance between the posts (of each pair of piles)—by two braces, one on each side at their extremity."—The *trabes* passed between the *tigna* and had one *fibula* above and one below. The *fibulae* kept firmly the *trabes* in their places; see plan.

quibus—tenerentur : "now that these (piles) were kept apart and had been braced in opposite directions, such was the solidity of the structure and such the nature of the materials that the greater the force of the current that drove against it, so much the more firmly were the piles kept bound together."—*quibus disclusis* ; H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.—*quo major—hoc arctius*: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250, R.—*incitavisset*: H. 529, II. : A. & G. 342.

haec—consternebantur : "these (cross-beams) were connected together by laying on timber straight, and were overlaid with poles and hurdles."—*haec*, i.e. the *trabes bipedales*. The timber (*materia*) or girders were laid at right angles to the current in the direction of the bridge.—*directa* : H. 443 ; A. & G. 191.—*longuriis*: joists, laid on the girders (*materia*) in the direction of the current.—*cratibus*: section of wicker work, probably branches of trees, laid over the joists to take the place of planks ; see plan.

ac—exciperent : "and no less carefully piles were also driven in obliquely at the lower point of the stream, so that they being placed by way of a buttress and joined with every part of the structure might stem the force of the river."—*nihil secius*: literally "different by nothing." These posts driven so as to slant up the stream braced the piers by breaking the force of the torrent.—*exciperent* : H. 497, I ; A. & G. 317.

spatio : abl. of degree of difference, as *supra pontem* has the force of a comparative.

dejiciendi operis causa : "for the purpose of destroying the work" : H. 544, 2 ; A. & G. 298, R.

his defensoribus=his defendentibus: abl. abs. expressing cause: H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

rerum, i.e., *trunci, naves.* —*neu=neve* : "and not."

CHAPTER XVIII.

decem diebus : abl. of time *within* which the action occurs.

quibus : "from the time that," "after" : see note on *quibus*, chapter XXIII. B. III.

coepta erat comportari : note that the pass. form of *coepi* is and when a passive infinitive is added ; the active form when an active infinitive follows : *he began to besiege the city* : *the city began to be besieged.*

praesidio relicto : H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

quibus....petentibus : "to whose request for peace and friendship"= *quibus quum peterent.*

fuga—iis : these abl. absolutes are not co-ordinate, the latter depending on the former : "had made preparations for flight owing to the strong advice of these" : as if he had said *fugam comparaverant quum ii hortarentur.*—*finibus excesserant* : *excedere* may take abl. or abl. with *ex* or the accusative.

CHAPTER XIX.

paucos dies : accusative of duration of time.

vicis ; see note on *vico* chapter I : B. I.

premerentur : subjunctive of vertical oblique narrative : H. 540 ; A. & G. 346.

posteaquam—comperissent : subjunctive of *oblique* narrative : H. 520 ; A. & G. 346.

nuntios demigrarent : scil, *hortantes* : "had sent messengers in all directions urging them to leave their towns" : H. 498, I ; A. & G. 331, a. It is not likely that the Suevi had walled towns : cp. B. VI. chap. 22.

hunc—obtinerent : "this was a chosen spot almost in the centre of these districts which the Suevi occupied."—*medium* : predicate agreeing with *locum* understood=*in medio* : H. 440, 2 IV. a ; A. & G. 193.

decertare: "to fight a pitched battle" : cp. *depugnare*; *καταπολεμόω*.

quod : "and this fact."

rebus : explained by the appositional clauses introduced by *ut* : H. 499, 3 : A. & G. 329, 2. The objects here mentioned were not accomplished, and altogether the results of this expedition were fruitless.

obsidione : the fact is that the Suevi had reduced the Ubii to the position of slaves. He probably means by the word that they were hemmed in on all sides : cp. B. VII. 32.

profectum, scil, *esse* : "that enough had been gained."

CHAPTER XX.

exigua—reliqua : "though but a small part of the summer remained" : H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

etsi—hiemes : "though in this district the winters set in early, because all Gaul slopes to the north." Note that *etsi* in Caesar occurs with present imperfect or pluperfect indicative in Caesar, but never with the subjunctive. The word *Britannia* is derived from the Keltic *brit* or *brith*, "painted," from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies : B. V. 14. In the old Welsh poems the island is called *Prydom* and the people *Brython.* The name *Albion* was also given to it : (cp. Aristotle de Mundo 3), which may be derived from *alp*, "white" or "high."

septentriones : the seven stars in the constellation of the Great Bear. The word is from *septem*, "seven,"—*trio*=*strio*, "a star" : cp. Sanscrit *târâ*=*staras*, "stars," literally, "strewers of light" : cp. English *star* ; German *stern.*

quod—intelligebat : cp. B. III., chapter IX., where he mentions the fact that the *Nannetes* and *Veneti* sent to Britain for aid in carrying on their wars against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar's motive was simply to be the first Roman who invaded the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bello Gallicis: "in the wars against the Gauls": probably an ablative of time or the ablative within a point of time, or *in* may be omitted.

inde=ex Britannia.

si—deficeret: "even though the time of the year would prevent him from carrying on a regular campaign": for the subjunctive of *oblique narrative* see H. 524; A. & G. 336.

magno usui: "of great advantage": H. 390; A. & G. 233. The frequent allusion to the conquest of Britain in the subsequent literature of Rome shows how popular such an expedition was.

si—cognovisset: the clauses introduced by *si* are really the subject of *fore*. Note the *asyndeton* in *loca, portus, aditus*.

Gallis: there can be no doubt that Caesar is wrong here; cp. his statements in B. III., chapter 8: *naves habent Veneti plurimas quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.*

neque—quisquam: "for not a single person goes there without a purpose." Note the emphatic position of *quisquam*. Zumpt says p. 280: "*temere* means, properly, *at random*, opposed to *consulto*, deliberately. Joined with *non*, *temere* acquires (but not in Cicero) a peculiar significance = *non facile*." This has the backing of the Greek paraphrast who translates this οὐ ῥᾳδίως. If this is so, translate, "for it is no easy matter for any one to go there."

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul are meant. In Caesar's time these were *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*. Augustus (B.C. 27) divided Gaul into *Narbonensis, Aquitania, Lugdunensis, Belgica.*

esset: dependent question: H. 549; A. & G. .

incolerent: scil, *eam.*

nationes: *gens* (Greek φῦλον) was a nation sprung from a common origin: *natio* (Greek ἔθνος) was a subdivision of the *gens.*

maiorum navium: he refers to the transports (*naves onerariae*).

CHAPTER XXI.

priusquam — faceret: "before he made the attempt": when does *priusquam* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? H. 520, 2; A. & G. 327. Note the original meaning of *periculum*: cp. Greek πεῖρα, πειράομαι.

Caius Volusenus: see note B. III. chapter V.

navi longa: see note B. III. chapter IX.

mandat: distinguish in meaning, *mandare*, 'to charge,' in consequence of a thorough confidence of the person entrusted with a commission (cp. Greek ἐφίεσθαι): *jubere*, 'to bid,' merely in consequence of one's own wish or will, in opposition to *vetare* (cp. Greek κελεύειν): *imperare*, 'to command' by virtue of military supreme authority (cp. Greek ἄρχειν).

Morinos: "into the country of the Morini." The *Morini* were "the dwellers on the sea": see note B. III. chapter IX. They occupied the district from the *Scaldis* (now Scheldt) on the east to the *Samara* (now

Somme) on the west. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bononia* (now Boulogne). The *brevissimus trajectus* is, of course, the Straits of Dover which is 21 miles in width between Dover and Calais.

Veneticum bellum: see B. III. This war was carried on B.C. 56.

ejus=Caesaris.—perlato: "having been reported."

qui polliceantur=ut ei polliceantur: H. 497, I.: A. & G. 330.

dare: rarely do we find a present infinitive and an omission of pronoun with verbs of *promising*: H. 537, N. 1; A. & G. 330, f.

liberaliter pollicetur: "making kind promises to them."—*domum*: H. 380, II. 2, 1; A. & G. 258, b.

Atrebatibus superatis: the ***Atrebates*** a people of ***Gallia Belgica*** occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name), but now named *Pas-de-Calais*. Others say that Arras (Flemish Atrecht) is a corrupt form of the name. They were defeated by Caesar at the river *Sabis* (now Sambre). A portion of them, after their defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in Berkshire on the Thames. It is quite probable that Caesar may have been influenced in sending Commius to Britain by the fact, that he being king of the Atrebates on the continent would also exercise an influence over his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "was highly esteemed": *magni* is the genitive of value: H. 404; A. & G. 252, a.

huic=Commio.

possit, scil, *adire.—adeat*: H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, f. R. Often *ut* is omitted after *mando*: cp. B. III. chapter III.: *huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat.*

eo=in Britanniam.

ut—fidem sequantur: "to join the side of": literally, "seek the protection of."

seque: construe *imperatque huic ut nunciet se (Caeasrem) celeriter venturum esse eo.*

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the nature of the country": B. III. chapter VII.: *cognoscere regiones.*

quantum—potuit: "as far as his means allowed him": H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, 3.—*facultatis*: partitive genitive: literally, "as much of opportunity as."

qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as he": H. 517; A. & G. 320, e.

navi egredi: "to disembark": cp. ἐκ νηὸς ἐκβαίνειν. Caesar uses both *navi egredi* or *ex navi egredi.*

perspexisset: dependent question: H. 529; A. & G. 334.

CHAPTER XXII.

dum—moratur: note that *dum*, expressing time merely, meaning "while" always takes the *present* indicative except in B. VII. 82 even when the principal verb is evidently *past.*

qui—excusarent : "to offer the following excuse for their past conduct :" H. 491, I ; A. & G. 317. This refers to the events narrated in the previous book ; chap. 28.

nostrae consuetudinis : he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who yielded to their power.

Populo Romano : dative of the object, "against the Roman people." There is implied a hostile relation in *bellum facere* : cp. *μάχεσθαί τινι.*

seque : construe *legatique venerunt, qui pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset.*

hoc—accidisse : "that this was a tolerably good streak of fortune." For another meaning of *accidit* see note B. III. chapter II.

quod—volebat : the indicative as giving Caesar's own reasons. —*post tergum* : "behind him."

has—anteponendas : "this business consisting of such trifles:" for descriptive genitive : H. 396, V. ; A. & G. 215.

Britanniae=trajectui in Britanniam : "to his expedition to Britain :" This continued mode of expression (*brachylogy*) is common in Greek and Latin poetry : *κόμαι χαρίτεσσιν ὁμοῖαι* ; "hair like (the hair of) the graces :" So Shakespeare Coriolanus, Act. II : sc. 2. 21 : *his ascent is not so easy as those who,* etc.

quibus adductis eos : *quibus* refering to the hostages : *eos,* to the Morini. —*in fidem* : "as a pledge" that the Morini would carry out their agreement.

coactis—contractisque : "having been collected and mustered."—*coactis* has the idea of collection under compulsion : *contractis* implies only their assembling.

quicquid—habebat : "all the ships of war he had besides." Note the use of *quicquid navium=omnes naves* : cp. Hor. Epist. 5. I. : *at o deorum quicquid in coelo regit* : Livy. 3. 9. : *per quicquid deorum est.*

huc—accedebant : "here were to have joined them." The imperfect expresses sometimes an *unfulfilled* intention : H. 469, II. I ; A. & G. 277, c.

ab—octo : "at the distance of eight miles." We sometimes find *ab* with the ablative of distance, and generally it is so used when the place is not mentioned, but understood from what precedes. Zumpt (§ 396) inclines to the idea that in the mind of the speaker the place is mentally governed by the preposition. We also find the same idiom in Greek : *ἀπὸ σταδίων εἰκόσιν τῆς πόλεως.*

quo minus=ut eo minus : goes with *tenebantur,* a verb of hindrance : H. 497, II. 2 ; A. & G. 319, c.

Q. Titurio Sabino. Sabinus and Cotta were *legati* of Caesar, and seem to have been highly esteemed by their commander. They perished in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones : B. V., 37. When these two are mentioned, the name of Sabinus comes first : B. IV., c. 38 ; B. V., c. 24 ; B. V., c. 52 : B. VI., c. 32. In B. VI., c. 37, the name of Cotta occurs first. Sabinus was probably the senior officer and higher in command, though both are styled *legati.*

Menapios: a people of *Gallia Belgica* who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was *Castellum Menapiorum* (now Kessel).

CHAPTER XXIII.

his constitutis rebus: express this in other ways.

tempestatem: "weather": a general term either good or bad according to the context.

tertia vigilia: the night was divided by the Romans into *four* watches, each of which would average three hours. Caesar would set out about midnight. It is generally held that the date was the 26th August. As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy, the Astronomer Royal, contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favours the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Griz-Nez.*; (Hist. of Rome. IV., 7.) Strabo also gives *portus Itius* for the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*) and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse*.

solvit, scil, *naves*: "he set sail": for the omission of *naves*: cp. Cic. de Off. III., 12, 50: de Murena, 25: cp. the Greek expression *αἴρειν ναῦσι*, or *ναῦς*.

equites—progredi: so that they might embark in the eighteen ships that were windbound.

naves conscendere: "to embark": cp. *ἐπιβαίνειν ναῦσι*, or *εἰσβαίνειν εἰς νῆας*. With *conscendere* we have either *navem* or *in navem*. In the same way Tacitus uses *ascendere*: *Ann* II., 75.

cum—administratum esset: the subjunctive as *cum* gives a reason for his starting with the cavalry. —*id*: refers to the embarkation of the cavalry. They were detained by stress of weather since they did not start till the 30th of August.—*tardius*: "too slowly": H. 444, 1: A. & G. 93, a.

hora—quarta: as sunrise would be shortly after 5 a.m., he would reach Britain about 9 a.m. Dr. Halley thinks that Caesar landed at *Deal*; D'Anville says at *portus Lemanis* (now *Lymne*), a short distance below Dover, while Mr. Airy gives *Pevensey* on the Sussex coast.

primis: "the vanguard."

expositas: here in the sense of *collocatas* or *instructas*. Elsewhere in Caesar *exponere* means (1) to disembark or (2) to point out, explain.

adeo angustis: "so close to it."

in litus: "to the water's edge": cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96): *litus est quousque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit.*—*litus*=Greek *ῥηγμίν*: *ripa* =Greek *ὄχθη*, the bank of a river: *ora*=Greek *ἀκτή*, the bank of land on the water.

ad egrediendum, scil, *ex navibus*: see note B. IV., chapter 21.

nequiquam idoneum: "altogether unsuited": litotes: H. 705, VI.; A. & G. 209, c.

dum—convenirent: H. 519, II. 2; A. & G. 328.

in anchoris exspectavit: a pregnant construction for ***naves ad anchoras deligavit et exspectavit***: "he cast anchor and waited."

legatis—convocatis: as the *imperator, legati, tribuni militum* and *principilus* formed the council of war, Caesar may here refer to its being called.

cognosset—vellet: dependent question: H. 549; A. & G. 334.

monuitque: followed by the clause *ut postularent* (H. 498, I; A. & G., 331, a), which is also followed by the clause (*ut*) *administrarentur*. The construction is loose and very doubtful Latin. With the reading the full construction is: *monuitque* (*ut*) *omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: "he warned them that everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time, since military practice and especially maritime affairs required this, inasmuch as these latter had a rapid and ever-changing movement": for the omission of *ut*: H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, f, R.—*ut quae*: H. 517, 3, 13; A. & G. 320, e.

sublatis anchoris: "having weighed their anchors": cp. *αἱρεσθαι τὰς ἀγκύρας*.

constituit: "he moored": cp. *ἐπ' ἀγκύρας ὁρμεῖν*.

ab eo loco: from Dover, probably towards the northeast.

aperto ac pluno litore: between Walmer Castle and Deal.

CHAPTER XXIV.

at: generally denotes a change in the narrative.

essedariis: the word ***essedum*** or *esseda* is from the Keltic ***ess***, "a chariot." It seems to have been used by the Gauls and the Germans, as well as by the Britons: cp. Verg. Georg. III., 204; Cic. ad Fam. 7, 6; Phil., 2, 58. It appears to have resembled the *δίφρος* of Homer, but to have been heavier, and open in front as well as behind. The *aurigae* mentioned in chapter 33 seem to have been the masters, while the fighting was done by the *clientes* or retainers. The word *essedarii* includes both *aurigae* and *clientis*: cp. Tac. Ag. 12: *auriga honestior*: *clientes propugnant*. This was the reverse of the Homeric method, where the driver (*ἡνίοχος*) was regarded as a mere attendant (*θεράπων*), while the warrior (*ἥρως*) was the chief man.

quo—genere: this statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): *in pedite robur*: *quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur.—consuerunt=consueverunt*: see note B. III. chapter I.

reliquis—subsecuti: "following close with the rest of the forces": cp. II. 19; II. 11, where *cum* is used. "It must be observed, as an exception, that the ancient writers, especially Caesar and Livy, in speaking of military movements, frequently omit the preposition *cum*, and use the ablative alone." Zumpt, 473.

ob has causas: "for the following reasons." Note that *hic* refers to *what follows* as well as to *what precedes*. With the former it is equivalent to the greek *τοιόσδε, ὅδε*, and the latter to *οὗτος, τοιοῦτος*.

quod—poterant : giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

militibus autem—quum illi : the order of the clauses is inverted. The second should come first, since *autem*=δέ, and *cum*=μέν. For the case of *militibus* : H. 388 ; A. & G. 232 ; of *locis* : H. 425, II. 2 ; A. & G. 258, f. —*oppressis* of course agrees with *militibus*, "weighed down." Translate: "the soldiers, moreover, weighed down with a great and heavy burden of armour, were compelled at one and the same time to leap down from the ships." The arms of an ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) were (a) *defensive*, consisting of a shield (*scutum* or *clipeus*) ; a helmet (*galea*) : a coat of mail (*lorica*) ; greaves (*ocreae*) : and (b) *offensive*, a sword (*gladius*) ; two javelins (*pila*).

omnibus—expediti : "having none of their limbs burdened with armour."

pedestribus proeliis : "in battles by land" : cp. *pedestres navalesque pugnae* : Cic. de Senec, 5 : *pedestria itinera* : Caesar, B. III., 9.

CHAPTER XXV.

Quod—advertit : the usual construction with *animum advertere* in the classical period is, *animum advertere ad aliquam rem* or *alicui rei*. The construction with two accusatives, one being a pronoun, *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, etc., is ante-classical, and though it occurs in Caesar and Sallust is really *archaic*. Cicero uses the form of *animadvertere* which Caesar also uses. —*quod* may be taken as (1) the accusative of specification or (2) as governed by the preposition in composition.

naves longas : see note chapter IX. B. III.

species : (cp. εἶδος) "appearance" embracing size, colour, shape, etc.; *figura* signifies "outline." The Britons like the Veneti (B. III. chap. 14.) were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars.

motus expeditior : "the speed of which rendered them more suitable for service."—*ad usum*=*ad navigandum*.

ad latus apertum : "on their unprotected flanks." This expression means here "the right" : so in B. II. chap. 23 ; B. VII. chap. 82. The *clipeus* or *scutum* protected the left.

fundis—tormentis : the slingers (*funditores*) and the archers (*sagittarii*) belonged to the class of the *velites*, or light armed infantry. The inhabitants of the Balearii islands supplied the former while the Creloies supplied the banners. By *tormenta* Caesar refers to the *catapulta*, *balista*, and *scorpiones* formed on the principle of the cross bow for hurling darts and stones against the enemy.

propelli ac submoveri : "to be driven off and destroyed :" an example of *hysteron proteron* : H. 704 IV. 2 ; A. & G. page 298.

magno usui : see note B. IV. chap. 20.

paulum modo : "just a little," "only a short distance."

atque : at the beginning of a new sentence *atque* is rare and marks a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes : "and then."

cunctantibus : abl. absolute. Curtius distinguishes the roots in *cunctor*,

"to hesitate:" (connected with ὀκνεῖν); *cunctus* (= *covinctus* or *cojunctus*), "whole" "all": and *percontor*, "to enquire" (connected with *contus*, κόντος) "a punt pole."

qui aquilam ferebat = aquilifer: "the eagle bearer." A bronze or silver eagle (*aquila*) was adopted by Marius in his second consulship (104 B.C.) as the standard of the legion. The standard of the *cohortes* were called *signa*, and seem to have been different for the different cohorts of the same legion. A figure of victory, a round ball, a hand and other emblems were used. The standard of the cavalry was a kind of banner called *vexillum*. The honor of carrying the eagle belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the *triarii*. He was called *primi pili centurio* or *prinipilus*, and he had an oversight over the other centurions. Along with the *tribuni militum*, *praefecti*, *legati*, and *imperator* he formed the council of war. He held the rank of an *eques*. —***decimae legionis***: the tenth was evidently Caesar's favourite legion: cp. B. I. chap. 40: *huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime*. The legions were numbered *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, etc., according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important undertaking with an appropriate *formula* of prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "his undertaking."—***commilitones***: "comrades."

nisi vultis: H. 508; A. & G. 315, b. To lose the standard was always looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since it was a violation of the military oath (*sacramentum*), which bound the soldier "not to desert their standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor leave their ranks": Livy, 22, 38. To animate the soldiers the standard was sometimes thrown among the enemy: Livy III., 70; II., 59; VI., 8.

officium praestitero: "shall perform my duty." The future perfect has here the form of a quickly completed future action: H. 473, I,: A. & G. 281, R.

magna: "loud."—***inter se***: "each other."

aquilam ferre: "to advance." Explain the phrases *signa inferre*: *signa referre*: *signa convertere*: *signa castris effere*: *ad signa convernire*.

dedecus: "disgrace," *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle.

universi: "in a body," "to a man."

ex navibus: the ships nearest the enemy, composing the first line.

CHAPTER XXVI.

pugnatum est: H. 301, I; A. & G. 146, c. Note and account for the position of *acriter*.

nostri tamen answered by ***hostes vero***. We should have expected ***hostes vero*** first followed by ***nostri tamen***, but the order is often inverted as in chapter XXIV.

quod—poterant: as giving Caesar's own reason. What would ***possent*** mean?

alius—aggregabat: literally, "one from one ship, another from another, collected around whatever standard he chanced to meet": H. 459, I; A. & G. 203, 3. For the construction of *signis*: H. 386; A. & G. 228.

singulares: "one by one": rarely used in the plural.

plures paucos: note the vividness of the asyndeton: construe *plures hostes circumsistebant paucos Romanos.*

alii: we should have expected *alii* before *conspexerant* to balance *alii* here.

adoriebantur—circumsistebant—conjiciebant: note the force of the imperfects: H. 469, II; A. & G. 277, b.

ab latere aperto: see note B. IV. chapter XXV. For the use of *ab*: cp. *ab hostibus*, "on the side of the enemy"; *a fronte*; *ab oriente*; *a nobis stare.*

quod—animadvertisset: see note B. IV. chapter XXV.

scaphas—navium: "the cutters belonging to the men-of-war."—*scapha*: cp. Greek σκάφη, σκάφος from σκάπτω, "to hollow out."

speculatoria navigia: "the spy-boats," specially built for quick sailing.

laborantes: "in distress."

simul—constiterunt: "as soon as they set foot on dry land."—*simul*= *simul ac*, or *simul atque.*

suis: "their comrades."—*longius*: "to any great distance": see note B. IV. chapter 23.

capere: "to reach." They were at *Wissant* or, some say, at *Ambleteuse*, unable to sail on account of a storm: cp. chap. 28.

ad pristinam: i.e., in this respect alone his success was incomplete.

CHAPTER XXVII.

de pace: "to treat for peace."

obsides daturos, scil, *se esse*: see B. IV. chapter XXI.

imperasset=*imperavisset*: subjunctive of *oratio obliqua*: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

quem — praemissum: the plupf. affects *praemissum*: "who, as I previously mentioned, had been sent forward."

quum—perferret: H. 517; A. & G. 326.—*oratoris modo*: "as an ambassador": cp. *ritu, more, ratione.*

imprudentiam: "rashness," "thoughtlessness."—*ignosceretur*: A. & G. 146, c.

quod—intulissent: Caesar assumes here an air of injured innocence.

cum ultro petissent: "since they had presumed to ask."—*continentem*, scil, *terram*: cp. ἤπειρος, scil, γῆ.

partem—partem: "some—others."

paucis diebus: "within a few days": H. 429, I; A. & G. 259, c.

principes subject of *coeperunt.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

his rebus : "by these measures" : instrumental ablative.

post—ventum=*quarto die postquam in Britanniam venerunt,* note the double construction : *diem quartum* is governed by *post* as if *post* were a preposition, though it is really a part of the conjunction *postquam* : cp. *ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias.* Since the Romans reckoned both days in an expression of time, this expression would be equivalent to our "three days after." Caesar set sail at midnight on the 26th of August, and landed on the coast of Kent about 10 a.m. August 27th, and the cavalry started on the 30th of the month. Dr. Halley calculates that the moon mentioned in the beginning of the next chapter was full on the night of the 30th. Note the varieties of expression for *post diem quartum quam : post quatuor dies quam : quatuor diebus postquam : quarto die postquam : quarto die quam* with *post* omitted.—***est ventum*** : H. 518 ; A. & G. 262. N.; 324.

supra : chapter XXV.

sustulerant : "had taken on board."

leni vento : "with a light breeze :" properly an ablative absolute : "the wind being mild." The *portus superior* where the cavalry had been weather-bound was Ambleteuse.

solverunt : "set sail :" here said of the ships themselves, although the word is generally used with reference to the crew.

ex castris viderentur : "and were visible from the camp." It is probable that Caesar's camp was pitched on an elevated spot, not far from the shore.

sed : construe *sed (tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut) aliae referrentur eodem.* —***eodem*** : "to the same spot."

aliae—dejicerentur : "(while) others were driven down." —***propius*** : construed here with the accusative, as is usual in Caesar : B. IV. 9 : V. 36. It may also be construed with a dative or acc. with *ad.*

magno—periculo : "with great peril to themselves :" *sui* is an objective genitive after *periculo.*

quae—petierunt : "while they, in spite of the fact that their anchors had been dropped, were nevertheless (*tamen*) filling with waves, putting out of necessity into the high seas in the teeth of night they made for the continent."—***quae*** join this with *quum.* —***tamen*** opposed to *anchoris jactis.*—***adversa nocte*** ; abl. abs. : H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

CHAPTER XXIX.

eadem nocte : the night of August 30th.

qui dies—consuevit : we might expect *quo die luna consuevit.* The construction is loose, and the sentence should be divided into two for an English translation. "It unfortunately happened on the same night that the moon was full. On the day when this happens the moon is wont to cause very high tides on the ocean." Another reading for *qui dies* is *quae nostrisque* : scil, *militibus.* The influence of the moon on the tides seems to have been

known to Cicero: cp. *de Divin.* 2. 14: *quid de fretis aut de marinis aestibus dicam? qūum accessus et recessus (flow* and *ebb) lunae motu gubernantur.* This work of Cicero did not appear, however, till 44 B.C., eleven years after the invasion of Britain. The rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible: hence the ignorance of the Romans respecting it. At Dover it rises to the height of 19 ft., at Boulogne to 25 ft.

uno tempore: "at one and the same time."

exercitum — curaverat: "had had the army brought across." The meaning of the gerundive with *curo* is peculiar. It does not mean *necessity,* but supplies the place of the present participle passive; that is, it has the meaning of a continued passive state: cp. B. I., 12: *pontem faciendum curat*: B. V. i., *naves aedificandas curarent.* With the infinitive *curo* is generally limited to negatives.

quasque—complebat = et eas naves quas in aridum subduxerat aestus complebat. Note that *subducere naves* is "to haul up" on shore opposed to *deducere naves* "to launch."

onerarias—afflictabat: "and the storm kept dashing together the ships of burden which were riding at anchor."—with *onerarias,* scil, *naves.* Note the force of the imperfect *afflictabat* as well as of the *frequentative*: H. 336; A. & G. 167, 6.

neque—dabatur: "nor was an opportunity afforded our men of managing (the vessels) or of lending aid."

compluribus—fractis: "after the wreck of several vessels." Express this in other ways.

quum—inutiles: "since the others were unseaworthy owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors and other tackling." —*funibus—amissis*: causal abl. abs. The *funes* (Gk. σχοίνια) were strong ropes by which the anchors were held or the cables by which the ships were fastened to the shore. The ropes of the rigging were called *rudentes* (Gk. τοπεῖα).—*armamentis*: see note B. III. chapter XIV.

magna: note the emphasis given to this word by its separation from the noun.

id quod—accidere: "as was unavoidable:" literally, "a thing which could not *but* happen." —*quod accidere*: the acc. with the inf. is the subject of *necesse erat.* For *id quod*: H. 445. 7: A. & G. 200, e.

quibus reportari possent = ut eis reportari possent: subjunctive of result. —*quibus*: abl. of instrument.

usui: dative of purpose: H. 390; A. & G. 233.

et—erat: "and because it was generally understood that they had to winter in Gaul, corn had not been provided in these places for the winter." *omnibus constabat*: literally, "it was agreed by all." Instead of the dative *omnibus* we also find *constare inter omnes*: B. VII 44, 47. —*in hiemem*: when predetermination of future time is meant, the Latins use *in* with acc. Translate: *he called the Senate for the next day*: *he called the Senate on the next day.*

CHAPTER XXX.

quibus rebus cognitis: express this in other ways.

principes: subject of *duxerunt*.

inter se collocuti: "talking with one another:" H. 448. N.; A. & G. 196, f.

cum—intelligerent—cognoscerent: "when they understood—observed." *intelligere* denotes a rational discernment by means of reflection: *cognoscere*, to know by the senses.

hoc: "on this account," "for this reason," explained afterwards by *quod*: causal ablative; H. 413; A. & G. 245.

impedimentis: distinguish *impedimenta*, baggage of the legion: *sarcina*, of the individual soldier.

optimum factu: literally, "the best thing in the doing" *i. e.*, the best course. The supine in —*u* is the abl. of respect.

rebellione facta: "after a renewal of the war." Express this in other ways.

frumento commeatuque: "from corn and other supplies:" abl. of separation: see note B. III. chap. III.; H. 414. I; A. & G. 243. a.

rem—producere: "to drag along the war:" cp. *rem trahere*; *bellum protrahere* or *extrahere*.

his superatis—interclusis: equivalent to conditional clause = *si hi superati essent—interclusi essent*.—With *reditu*: cp. B. I. 8.: *commeatu prohibere*.

conjuratione facta: "forming a league:" here used in a good sense: cp. Thucy. V. 83., cp. note B. III. chapter VIII.

rursus = *re versus*: "back again" from peace to war.

paulatim: "little by little:" opposed to *universi*.

deducere: *i.e.*, to this place where they were going to make war, from the interior to the sea coast: note the force of *de* in *de ducere*; cp. κατα in κατάγειν.

CHAPTER XXXI.

cognoverat: "was familiar with:" note the plupf. of *cognosco* has the force of an imperf. and the perf. that of a present: H. 297, I., N. 2; A. & G. 143, c. n.

ex eventu navium: "from what had happened to his ships."

ex eo quod: "from the fact that:" defined by the following clause.

fore—suspicabatur: "suspected that that would happen which actually did." The foresight of Caesar was one of his most prominent characteristics.

subsidia: "resources," literally, "succours." Elsewhere *subsidia* in Caesar means: (1) "reserves," "relieving forces": (2) "the act of bringing relief": B. VII. 86.

quotidie: "daily," expressing simple repetition: *in dies singulos* said of things daily increasing or decreasing: cp. note B. III. chapter XXIII.

quae naves, earum=earum navium quae. —*naves* : H. 445, 9 ; A. & G. 200, b.

ad eas res=eis rebus : "for these purposes."

administraretur : impersonally, "it was carried out :" *i.e.*, his directions were carried out.

duodecim—amissis : concessive, "though twelve ships had been lost."

reliquis—effecit : literally "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest." —*reliquis* may be either (1) ablative of instrument or (2) ablative of accompaniment.

CHAPTER XXXII.

dum—geruntur : see note chapter XVII., B. III.

frumentatum : "on a foraging expedition" : H. 546 ; A. & G. 302.

ad id tempus : "up to this time."

ulla suspicione interposita : "any suspicion having arisen ;" H. 435 ; A. & G. 255.

hominum : "inhabitants :" here =*Britannorum.*

ventitaret : "continued to come :" note the force of the frequentative So we have *actito* (from *agĕre*); *lectito* (from *lego*); *scriptito* (from *scribo*): *haesito* (from *haereo*); *visito* (from *video*). How are frequentatives formed? H. 336 ; A. & G. 167, c.

in statione : "on guard :" called *stationes.* For the gates of a Roman camp see plan introduction p. xix. —*stationes* were properly guards at the gates of the camp: *excubiae*, guards by day or night : *vigiliae*, night guards only ; *custodiae*, guards to defend the fortification. The guard was inspected by *circuitores*, and changed every three hours, *i.e.*, at the end of each watch.

quam consuetudo ferret : "than was usual" ; "than custom admitted of." —*ut* is omitted after *quam.* For another reason for subjunctive : H. 502. 2 ; A. & G. 332, b.

in ea parte—in quam partem : the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar, and occurs when distinctness is required. In rendering into English omit the antecedent in the relative clause : see note chapter I. B. III.

id quod erat suspicatus : scil, *esse.* The indic. *erat* is used because the words are inserted by the writer and are not dependent on *suspicatus.* Note that *id* is used merely for emphasis as in Cic. de Off. 2, 6 : *male se res habet, quum quod virtute effici debet, id temptatur pecunia.*

aliquid novi consilii : "some new plan :" literally, "something of a new plan :" partitive genitive.

in stationem succedere : "to take their place on guard." Note the idea of motion conveyed by the Latin *succedere* and hence *in* with accusative.

confestim : "immediately." note the emphatic position of the adverb. It is connected with same root as in *festino*, "to hasten."

aegre sustinere, scil, *hostes* : "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check." Compare the adverb *aegre.*

conferta legione : the ablative absolute denotes the cause of their being under a cross-fire : "in consequence of their being crowded together."

nam quod : "for since."—*nam* is taken with *diluerant* : while *quod* is joined to *erat*.

noctu : cp. *diu*, *interdiu*, *dudum* (=*diu-dum*) : old ablatives.

tum—perturbaverant : "then suddenly attacking (our men) scattered, after they had laid aside their arms, and were busy in reaping, (*i.e.* the enemy) they threw the rest into confusion, after slaying a few, since their ranks were irregular." With *dispersos*, scil, *nostros milites*. —*armis dispositis* : express this in other ways.

equitatu atque essedis circumdederant : scil, *nostros*. Express this by another construction : H. 384, II. 2 ; A. & G. 225, d.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ex essedis : an adjective attributive of *pugnae* : "of the chariot fighting" : H. 359, N. 1, 4 ; A. & G. 217, R.

pugnae=*pugnandi* : cp. B. I. 48 : *genus hoc erat pugnae.*

primo : "at first." Both *primo*, and *primum* means, "for the first time" : *primo*, also means "at first" : *primum*, "firstly."

ipso—equorum : "by the sheer dread caused by their horses" ; ablative of instrument. What genitive is *equorum* ? H. 396, III. ; A. & G. 214.

strepitu : "rattling" : cp. Claudian Epigram IV. : *esseda multisonora.*

ordines, scil, *hostium*.

insinuaverint : future perf. indic. : literally, "they shall have made their way." In English we would say, "they have made their way."

pedibus : "on foot" : H. 419, III. ; A. & G. 248.

aurigae : see note B. IV. Chapter XXIV.—*interim* : refers to a momentary space of time : *interea*, implies continued duration.

illi : refers to the retainers (*clientes*) : see note B. IV. Chapter XXVI.

praestant : "secure."

tantum—efficiunt : "they became so proficient by daily experience and practice"

in—loco : "when the ground is sloping and even steep." Since the verb *sum* has no present participle in use, the prepositional ablative absolute is used for it. For the use of *ac* : H. 310, I. ; A. & G. 156, a.

brevi, scil, *tempore* : "in a short time" ; "in a moment," : cp. ἐν βραχεῖ, scil, χρόνῳ.

per temonem : "along the whole length of the pole." According to Max Müller (Science of Language, Vol. II., p. 402), *temo*=*tegmo* : connected with *tignum*. Varo (L. L. VII., 78) derives it from *teneo*, as *holding* the yoke.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quibus rebus : some take this as a causal ablative : "and owing to these facts." Others supply *permotus* or *adductus*. Others again take them as ablative absolute : "when matters were in this state" : H. 431 ; A. & G. 255. Others make *rebus* the ablative of cause depending on *perturbatis*, or as a dative depending on *tulit*.

namque: cp. καὶ γάρ : "and (this was evident) for." *Namque* in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and always the first word of a proposition.

ejus adventu : "on his arrival" : ablative of time when.

quo facto : concessive abl. abs.: "though this was done."

ad lacessendum, scil, *hostes* : "for provoking the enemy to battle" : others take *lacessendum* a gerundive with *proelium* : "for provoking a battle."

alienum : "unfavourable." —*alienus* is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to *suus* or *opportunus* : cp. *locus suus* : "ground of his own chosing," *i. e.*, "favorable ground."

suo—loco : for the omission of in : cp. B. IV. chap. IV.

brevi—intermisso : "and a short time having elapsed :" H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

dum—geruntur : see note B. III. chapter XVII.

continuos dies : acc. of durative of time : H. 379 ; A. & G. 256. —*continuus* : denotes an unbroken succession: used (1) of time, as B. I. 48 ; V. 13 : (2) of disaster, B. VII. 14.

tempestates : see note on B. IV. Chapter XXIII.

quae—continerent := *tales ut—continerent* : H. 500, 1 ; A. & G. 319.

praedicaverunt : "openly boasted." Distinguish *praedīco, praedĭco*.

praedae faciendae : "of securing booty." The phrase does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum : either supply *tempus* or *perpetuum* is neut. adj. used as an abstract noun : "for ever :" cp. εἰς ἀΐδιον.

si—expulissent : "if they should succeed in driving out :" the pluperfect denotes the accomplishment of the expulsion, and the subjunctive is used because of the virtual *oratio obliqua* in *demonstraverunt*.

daretur : "was offered :" dependent question : H. 529 ; A. & G. 334.

his rebus : "by these representations," to their countrymen.

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem : subject of *fore*, and explained by the appositive clause *ut—effugerent*. —*effugerent* : means, they had escaped in the past and would do so in the future.

triginta : some commentators give CCC : others, XXX. The MSS., however, the latter.

diutius : join this word with *non* : "they could no longer stand."

quos=et eos : H. 353 ; A. & G.

tanto spatio—potuerunt : "for such a distance as far as speed and strength allowed :" H. 379. 2 ; A. & G. 257, 6. Others take *spatio* as ablative absolute : "the distance being so great." —*cursu et viribus* : literally, "by running and strength :" ablative of instrument.

occīderunt, scil, *nostri milites*. Distinguish in meaning *occīderunt* and *occĭderunt*.

omnibus—incensis : "all the property far and wide being destroyed and burnt." —*affligere=solo aequare* : "to level with the ground." Another reading is *aedificiis incensis*.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

his—duplicavit : *duplico* follows the construction by analogy of *impero*.

quem ante imperaverat : see B. IV., chapter XXVII.

in continentem : "to the continent" : see B. IV. Chapter XXVII.

propinqua—aequinoctii : "as the day of the equinox was near" : ablative absolute. The date of the equinox was September 24th. This remark shows how stubbornly the Britons opposed Caesar's advance. He landed on the 27th August, and though he had been nearly a month attempting to gain possession of the island, we find him still at the sea shore.—*dies* is feminine here, as it usually is, when it means *time* generally or in the sense of a *fixed* or *appointed* day : cp. *die constituta, die dicta*.

infirmis—existimabat : literally, "he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to a storm, his ships being unseaworthy," *i.e.*, "he did not think that he on his voyage should run the risk of encountering a storm, seeing that his ships were unseaworthy."—*infirmis navibus* : ablative absolute or some say ablative of instrument with "unseaworthy ships," not a dative after *subjiciendam*.—*hiemi* : dative governed by *subjiciendam* : cp. B. VII. 77 : *et perpetuae servituti (Galliam) subjicere*.

eosdem—portus : *Boulogne* or *Ambleteuse*.

paulo sunt : were carried down the channel below *Gesoriacum* (Boulogne), perhaps as far as the modern Etaples.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ex navibus—expositi, scil, *in terram*. This refers to the *duae onerariae*.

proficiscens : "in the act of setting out" : =*cum proficisceretur*.

praedae : *praeda* = *prae-hend-a* or *prae-hid-a* : root HEND, Greek χαδ in χανδ-άνω, 'to seize' : cp. *praedium=praehendium*.

non ita : "with not so very large a number" : instrumental ablative. This use of *ita* is limited like the English *so* to negative clauses : cp. B. V. 47 ; *non ita multum moratus*.

circumsteterunt, scil *eos* : the three hundred.

nollent: H. 527, I; A. & G. 337. The *obliqua oratio* is implied in *jusserint*. —*orbe facto*: "having formed themselves into a circle." In Sallust (Jug. 97) we have a detailed account of this movement. The baggage was placed in the centre, and the soldiers, facing the enemy, formed a circle round it. In cases of extreme danger this movement was resorted to: cp. B. V. 33, where *Ambiorix* attacked Cotta and Sabinus.

celeriter: note the emphatic position. What would be the usual position?

ad clamorem: "at the shouts:" either *ad* means an answer to, in accordance with, or goes with *convenerunt*.

suis auxilio: "as a help to his men:" H. 390, II; A. & G. 233.

amplius quator horis. What would be the ordinary construction? H. 379, 487; A. & G. 256. For the ablative: cp. B. VII, 9: *longius triduo*; B. IV., *longius anno*.

paucis vulneribus: "having sustained a trifling loss:" H. 431; A. & G. 255.

postea vero quam=*posteaquam vero*.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Morinos: see note B. IV. chapter XXI.

siccitates: the plural may mean either the continued dryness or the dryness in many different marshes: H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75, c. Compare this statement with what Caesar says in B. IV. chap. 34. These two statements hardly agree.

quo se reciperent non haberent: "did not know where to retreat to." With *habeo*: cp. ἔχω. The subjunctive would represent a subjunctive in the direct narrative: *quo me recipiam?* "when am I to retreat?" So with a past tense: *quo me reciperem non habebam.*.

quo—perfugio: "which as a refuge." It is best to make *perfugio* an example of an antecedent attracted into the case of the relative since it is in the same clause, or make the object of *haberent*, *locum* and *perfugio* a dative of purpose. Caesar probably refers to the marshes on the *Scheldt*: cp. B. II. chap. XVI, for similar conduct on the part of the Aedui.

superiore anno: B. C. 56: B. III. Chapter XXVIII.

quod—abdiderant: "because the Menapii had all concealed themselves by taking refuge in the thickest woods." What would be the meaning if *in silvas* had been the reading? cp. B. II. Chap. XVI: *qui in silvis abditi latebant*.

neglexerunt: scil, *hoc facere*: cp. B. III. Chap. XXVII: *ultimae nationes hoc facere neglexerunt*. Dion Cassius gives this as a reason for Caesar's second invasion to Britain.

his rebus gestis: "owing to their exploits:" causal abl. abs.

ex: "in accordance with:" —*dierum viginti*: genitive of description: H. 396, V; A. & G. 215.

supplicatio: the word may be either a day of thanksgiving for national success, or a day of humiliation for national disaster. When a general

gained a victory he sent a letter wreathed in laurels (*litterae laureatae*) to the Senate. If the victor deserved it, a thanksgiving (*supplicatio*) was usually appointed which generally lasted several days. The thanksgiving for Caesar's victory over the Belgae was held for fifteen days, an honor which Caesar says no one had obtained before: B. II. Chapter XXXVII. The thanksgiving for his victory over Vercingetorix also lasted twenty days: B. VII. Chapter XC.

erae laureatae) to
(*supplicatio*) was
The thanksgiving
en days, an honor
Chapter XXXVII.
lso lasted twenty

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. =**adjective**; **f.** =**feminine**; **m.** =**masculine**; **N.** =**noun**; **n.** =**neuter**; **pl.** =**plural**; **sing.** =**singular.**

A.

Adcantŭannus, -i: N. m.: *Adcantuannus*, a chief of the Sotiates. He endeavoured together with six hundred devoted partisans (*soldurii*) to escape from the town of the Sotiates when it was attacked by Crassus, one of the lieutenants of Caesar. He was unsuccessful in his attempt and was driven back into the town and forced to surrender: (B. III. chap. XXII.)

Allŏbrŏges, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between Isara (*Isere*) and the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was Vienna (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The word signifies "highlanders," from *al*, "high; *broga*, "land."

Alpes, -ium; N. pl. f.: *the Alps* derive their name from the Keltic *alp*, "high" or "white." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the names given to the divisions of this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. Viso; *Alpes Cottiae*, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; *Alpis Peninae*, from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticae*, from St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricae*, fram Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; *Alpes Carnicae* vel *Juliae*, extending from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambiliāti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambiliati*, a people of ancient Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the modern Abbeville.

Ambivăriti, -ōrum; N. pl. m; the *Ambivariti*, a people of ancient Gaul, near the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Andes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Andes*, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern *Anjou* or what is now called *Department de la Mayenne*. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (*Loire*), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andicavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, and in this statement he is inaccurate as the Nannetes intervened (B. II., C. XXXV.; B. III., C. VII.; B. VII., C. IV.).

Ăquitāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Aquitanians*, one of the three great divisions of Gaul, inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garunna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi more than they did the Gauls.

Ăquitānia, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Aquitania*, a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garronne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Ăquitānus, a, ŭm; Adj.: *an Aquitanian*: see Aquitani.

Ărĭŏvistus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, "an army"; *Fürst*, "a leader"; or from *Aar*, "an eagle," and *Vistus*, a Latinized form of *first=horst*, "a nest"; the word would then signify *eyry*.

Ătrĕbas, -ātis; adj.: *an Atrebatian*.

Atrĕbătes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Atrebatians*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S. E. from that of the Morini and S. W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais.* Their chief town was Nemetocenna (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*).

Aulerci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Aulerci*, a general name applied to four different tribes in Gaul.

(1) *Aulerci Brannovices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern *Briennois.*

(2) *Aulerci Cenomanni*: N. W. from the former, above the Andes and the Turones; and west of the Carnutes; their territory corresponded to the modern *Department de la Sarthe.* Their capital was Suindīnum, afterwards Cenomanni, now *Maus.*

(3) *Aulerci Eburones*: often called simply *Eburones*, N. W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (*Seine*), above Lutetia (*Paris*). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, now *Evreux.*

(4) *Aulerci Diablintes*; N. W. of the Cenomanni; their chief town was Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes (now *Jableins*).

Ausci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.; *the Ausci*, a people of Aquitania in ancient Gaul.

Auruncŭleius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

B.

Băcŭlus: N. sing. m.: *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the front rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself for his valour (B. II., C. XXV.; B. III., C. V.; B. VI., C. XXVIII).

Bătăvōrum Insŭla: that portion of Holland bounded on two sides by the northern and southern branches of the Rhine and on the third by the sea. It corresponds at the present day to a part of the Duchy of *Gueldres* and a large portion of Southern Holland. (B. IV. C. X).

Belgae, -ārum: N. pl. m.: *the Belgae*, a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Keltae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Bigerrīōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Bigerriones*, a people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, to the west of the Garumni.

Britannia, -ae; N. sing, f.: the island of *Great Britain.*

Britanni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Britons.*

Brūtus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Brutus*, the commander of the Roman fleet in the war against the Veneti.

C.

C. = Căius: a Roman *praenomen.*

Caesar, -is; *Caesar*: see Life of Caesar in *Introduction.*

Cantabri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Cantabri*, a warlike people of the N. E. of Spain, along the shores of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their country corresponded to the modern Biscay and part of *Asturias.*

Carcăso, -ōnis; N. sing. m: *Carcaso*, a city of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman Province. It was situated on the river Atax (*Aude*) and lay inland in a western direction from Narbo Martius (*Narbonne*). It is now called *Carcassonne.*

Cnēius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cneius*, a Roman *praenomen.*

Cŏcŏsātes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Cocosates*, a people of Aquitania, lying along the coast of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their chief city was Cocossa on the coast, some distance above Aquae Augustae (now *Acqs* or *Dun*); B. III., C. XXVII).

Commius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Commius*, a chief of the Atrebatians.

Condrūsi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Condrusi*, a people of Gallia Belgica on the Mŏsa (*Meuse*), to the north of the Trēviri and Paemani.

Cotta, ae; N. sing. m.: see *Lucius Aruncuieius Cotta.*

Crassus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *M. Licinius Crassus*, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate 59 B. C. He was consul also in 70 B. C., and in 55 B. C. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Carrhae* he fell in battle against the Parthians.

Cūrĭŏsŏlītae, -ārum ; N. pl. m.: *the Curiosolitae*, an Armoric nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern *St. Malo*, between *Dinant* and *Lambelle*, in Britanny. (B. II., C. XXXIV).

D.

Dĕcĭmus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Dĕcŭmānus, -a -um ; adj.: *Decuman*, a name given to one of the gates of a Roman camp.

Dĭăblintes, -ium ; N. pl. m.: *the Diablintes*, a branch of the Aulerci (see *Aulerci*).

E.

Ēbūrōnes, -um : N. pl. m.: *the Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S. W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*) from the modern *Liege* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca (B. II., C. IV.)

Ebūrŏvices, -um ; N. pl m.: *the Eburovices*, a branch of the Aulerci ; (see *Aulerci*).

Elŭsātes, -ium ; N. pl. m.: *the Elusates*, a people of Aquitania, to the northwest of the Volcae Tectosages. Their chief town was Elusa (now *Euse*). B. III. C. XXVII.

Esŭbii, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Esubii*, a people in the Alpes Maritimae, north of the Edenates. They are sometimes called Esubiani The river *Ubaye* runs through what was formerly their territory ; (B. III., C. VII.)

G.

Galba, -ae ; N. sing. m.: *Servius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Gallĭcus, -a -um ; adj.: *Gallic* : of or belonging to Gallia

Gallĭa, -ae ; N. sing. f.: *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia and Lombardy. Gaul was in Caesar's time divided into *Gallia Transalpina* or *Gallia Ulterior*, Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France ; and *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Gallia Citerior*, Gaul, this side of the Alps, or northern Italy.

Gallus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *a Gaul*.

Garĭtes, -ium ; N. pl. m.: *the Garites*, a people of Aquitania, between the Elusates and Ausci, in part of *Gascony*, or the more modern department of *du Gers*.

Garumni, -ōrum ; N pl. m.: *the Garumni*, a Gallic tribe, near the head waters of the Garumna (*Garonne*), in the department of *de la Haute-Garonne*.

Germāni, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Germans*, a general name given by the Romans to the nations dwelling east of the Rhine. The word is probably from either (1), *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening w to g) and *mann*, "a man"; so that the word would mean "warriors," or (2), from the Keltic *gerr*, "war" and *mann*, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Germānia, -ae ; N. sing. f.: *Germany*.

H.

Helvetĭi, -ōrum : N. pl. m.: *the Helvetii*, a nation conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were much narrower than those of the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lacus Brigantinus (*Lake of Constance*) ; on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lacus Lemannus (*Lake of Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hispānia, -ae ; N. sing. f.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of ἑσπερία, "the western land"; cp. ἕσπερος, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "the evening."

I.

Illȳrĭcum, -i; N. sing. n.: *Illyricum*, the modern district now occupied by *Dalmatia*, *Bosni*, and *Herzegovina*.

Itălia, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Italy*: a country of Southern Europe.

L.

Lăbiēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Lemannus, -i; N. sing. m.: now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Lĕŏpontii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Leopontii*, a Galic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Leopontine Alps, which separated Italy from Helvetia. Their district corresponded to the Val Levantina, that part of the Alps occuped by the *Great St. Bernard* and *St. Gothard*: (B. IV., C. IX.)

Lexovii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Lexovii*, a nation of Keltic Gaul, on the, coast below the mouth of the Sequana. Their capital was Noviomagus, afterwards called Lexovii (now *Lisieux*: B. III., chap. IX., XVII; B. VII. chap. LXXV.)

Liger, -ĕris; N. sing. m.: *the Loire*, the largest river in Gaul. It rises in Mons Cebennus(now *Cevennes*), and for the one half of its course was directly north, then turns to the west and falls into the Atlantic between the territories of the Pictones and the Nannetes. The Liger receives numerous tributaries, the most remarkable of which are the Elaver (now *Allier*), Carus (now *Cher*), Andria (now *Indre*) and Vincennia (now *Vienne*).

Lūcius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

M.

M. = **Marcus**: a Roman *praenomen*.

Manlius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Manlius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Mediŏmatrici, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Mediomatrici*, a people of Gaul in the neighbourhood of the modern *Metz*.

Mĕnăpii, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Menapii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine. Their town was called *Castellum*.

Mĕnăpiōrum castellum; (now *Kessel*) on the Mosa (*Meuse*): B II. C. IV.

Mŏrini, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Morini*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. Their name means "sea people": being derived from the Keltic *mor*, (Latin *mare*), "the sea."

Mŏsa, -ae; N. sing. m.: *the Meuse*, a river of Gaul, rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosegus, and falling into the Vahalis (now *Waal*): B. IV. C. X.

N.

Nannĕtes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Nannetes*, a people of *Gallia Celtica* who dwelt about the district of the modern Nantes.

Nantŭātes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Nantuates*, a people who dwelt in the neighborhood of Geneva.

Narbo, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: *Narbo*, an important city of Gaul on the river Atax (now *Aude*). It was subsequently the capital of the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*. (B. III., C. XX.; B. VII., C. VII., B. VIII., C. XL. VI.)

Nervicus, -a, -um: adj.: of or belonging to the *Nervii*.

O.

Ocĕănus, -i; N. sing. m.: *the Ocean*, *i.e.*, the Atlantic in contradistinction to the Mediterranean.

Octodūrus, -i; N. sing. m.: now *Martigny* or *Martinach*, the chief town of the Veragri (B. III., Chap. I.)

Osismii, -ōrum; N. pl. m: *the Osismii*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, in the N. W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern Brittany, around Cape Finisterre. In their country was Brivates Portus (now *Brest*).

P.

P. = Publius; a Roman *praenomen.*

Pictŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Pictones* a Gallic tribe along the southern bank of the Liger (*Loire*). Their chief town was *Lominum*, afterwards Pictones (now *Poitiers*) in the department *de la Vienne.* They occupied the district of the modern *Poitou.*

Piso, -onis; N. sing. m.: an Aquitanian. (See B. IV., C. XII.)

Pompēius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cneius Pompeius*, the Roman triumvir. (See Roman history).

Praecōninus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Praeconinus*, a Roman *cognomen.*

Prĕciāni, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Preciani*, a people of *Aquitania.*

Prōvincia, -ae; N. sing. f.: *the Provincia*, the southern part of Gaul, called afterwards *Gallia Braccata* and *Gallia Narbonensis.*

Publius, -i; N. sing. m.: a Roman *praenomen.*

Q.

Q. = Quintus; *Quintus*, a Roman *praenomen*

R.

Rĕmi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Remi*: a people of Gaul inhabiting the neighbourhood of the modern *Rheims.*

Rhēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *the Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons.* It passes through lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake Constance*), and flows through lacus Acronius, (*Lake Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*).

Rhŏdănus; N. sing. m.: *the Rhine*, a river rising in the Leopontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Leman nus (*Lake of Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the Linus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow."

Rōma; N. sing. f.; *Rome*: (the word is probably from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow"; properly *Srouma* = "the stream town.")

Rōmānus, -a, -um; adj.: *Roman.*

S.

Săbinus; N. sing. m.: *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of the legati of Caesar.

Santŏni, -ōrum; or **Santŏnes, -um**; N. pl. m.; *the Santoni* or *Santones*, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now *Saintes.*

Sedūni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Seduni*, a people of Helvetia, dwelling among the Alps.

Sĕquăni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Sequani*, a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus, a king of the Germans, to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now *Besançon*).

Sertōrius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sertorius*, a Roman General.

Servius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Servius*, a Roman name.

Sigambri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Sigambri*, a powerful German tribe dwelling near the Rhine, south of the river, the Ruhr.

Sesūvii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Sesuvii*, a nation in the N. W. part of Gaul. Their position was the modern diocese of *Séez.*

Sextius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sextius*, a Roman name.

Sibuzates, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Sibuzates*: a people, *Gallia Aquitanica.*

Silius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Silius*, a Roman name.

Sotiātes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Sotiates*, a people of *Gallia Aquitanica.*

Sulpitius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sulpitius*, a Roman name.

Suēvi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Suevi*, a powerful tribe of northern and eastern Germany. Their name still exists in *Suabia.*

T.

T.=Titus: a Roman *praenomen.*

Tarbelli, -ōrum; N. pl. m: *the Tarbelli*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tarūsātes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Tarusates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Terrasidius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Terrandius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Titūrius, -ii; N. sing. m.: *Titurius*, a Roman name.

Tencthĕri, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tencthери*, a German city on the Rhine.

Tolōsa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*), a tribe in southern Gaul.

Transrhēnāni: see *Transrhenanus.*

Transrhēnanus, -a, -um; [*trans*, "across;" *Rhēnus*, "the Rhine."]: *a dweller across the Rhine, that which is across the Rhine.*

Trebius, -ii: N. sing. f.: *Trebius*, a Roman name.

Trēviri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Treviri*, a native of Gallia Belgica N. E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*), their chief city was Augusta Trevirorum (now *Treves*).

Trībŏci, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Triboci*, a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in the modern Alsace.

U.

Ubii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ubii*, a German tribe near the modern *Cologne.*

Unelli, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: *the Unelli*, a people to the N. W. of what is now *Normandy.* Their chief town was Coriallum (now *Gouril*).

Usipĕtes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the Tencthери.

V.

Văhălis, -is; N. sing. m.: *the Vahalis* (now *Waal*) forming the left arm of the Rhine.

Vălĕrius, -ii; N. sing. m.: *Valerius*, a Roman name.

Velānius, -ii; N. sing. m.: *Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Vĕnĕti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the western extremity, above *Nannetes*, and the mouth of the Liger (*Loire*), and bordering on the Atlantic. They were the most powerful among the Armoric states, and were conspicuous for their skill in navigation. Their chief town was Darioigum, afterwards called Veneti (now *Vannes*).

Vĕnĕticus, -a, -um; dj. see *Veneti.*

Vĕnĕtia, -ae: N. sing. f. See *Veneti.*

Vĕrăgri, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: *the Veragri*, a tribe who dwelt amid the Alps. Their chief town was Octodurus (now *Martigny* or *Martinach*).

Viridŏvix, -icis; N. sing. m.: *Viridovix* a chief of the Unelli.

Vocātes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Vocates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Vŏlūsēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Volusenus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vŏsĕgus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Vosegus* (now *Vosges*), a mountain chain in Gaul.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a. *or* act.	active.
abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
acc. to	according to.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
c=cum	with.
cf. =confer	compare.
ch	chapter.
comm. gen	common gender.
comp.	comparative degree.
conj	conjunction.
contr	contracted.
dat.	dative.
def. defect	defective.
dem. demonstr.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
desid	desiderative.
dissyll.	dissyllable.
esp.	especially.
etym	etymology.
f.	feminine.
folld	followed.
fr	from.
freq	frequentative.
fut.	future.
gen.	genitive.
gov.	governing.
Gr	Greek.
imperf	imperfect.
inch	inchoative.
ind. *or* indic	indicative.
indecl.	indeclinable.
indef	indefinite.
inf. *or* infin.	infinitive.
intens.	intensive.
interj.	interjection.
interrog	interrogative.
irr. *or* irreg.	irregular.
m	masculine.
n. *or* neut	neuter.
nom	nominative.
num	numeral.
o. h. g.	old High German.
obsol	obsolete.
ord.	ordinal.
p. *or* part	participle.
pa	participial adj.
pass	passive.
perf	perfect.
pers	person, personal.
pluperf	pluperfect.
plur	plural.
pos	positive degree.
poss	possessive.
prep	preposition.
pres	present.
prob	probably.
pron	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
Sans	Sanscrit.
semi-dep	semi-deponent.
sing	singular.
subj	subjunctive.
sup	superlative; supine.
trisyll.	trisyllable.
t. t.	technical term.
uncontr	uncontracted.
v. a.	verb active.
v. dep	verb deponent.
v. n.	verb neuter.
voc.	vocative.
=	equal to.

N. B.—The figures before v. a., v. dep., and v. n., denote the conjugation of the verb.

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.

Such forms and meanings of words, as do not belong to the text, are not inserted in the Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.

A.

ab (a), prep. gov. abl.: *From, away from. On the side of; in the direction of.* Without Abl. of place, and in combination with ablative of distance: *Away, off*: ab millibus passuum octo, *eight miles off. On, at, in.* Of the agent: *By* [akin to Gr. ἀπ-ό; English *off.*]

ab-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [ăb, "away"; do, "to put"]. With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To hide,* or *conceal, one's self* by withdrawing.

ab-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ab-jăcio; f. ăb, "away"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To throw,* or *fling, away.*

ab-scindo, scĭdi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. [ab, "away"; scindo, "to tear *or* rend"] *To tear* or *rend away; to sever.*

abs-ens, ntis, pa. [abs-um, "to be absent"] *Absent.*

ab-sĭmĭlis, simile, adj. [ab. in "negative" force; similis, "like"] *Unlike to*: non absimilis, *not unlike to,* i.e. *resembling.*

abs-trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3. v. a. [abs (=ab), "away"; trăho, "to drag"] *To drag* or *tear away.*

ab-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [ăb, "away"; sum, "to be"] *To be away, to be absent* or *distant. To be wanting.* Impers.: neque longius abesse, quin, *and that it was not very far wanting, but that* or *from.*

ac; see atque.

ac-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [for ad-cēdo; fr. ad, "to"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go to* or *up to; to draw near, approach; to be added.* Impers.: **accessit**, *it was added.*

ac-cĭdo, cĭdi, no sup., cidĕre, 3. v. n. [for ad-cădo; fr. ad, "upon"; cădo, "to fall"] Of missiles: *To fall upon, reach, strike, hit,* the mark. *To fall out, happen, come to pass.*

ac-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-căpio; fr. ad, "to"; căpio, "to take"] *To receive.*

ac-clīv-is, e, adj. [for ad-clivis; fr. ăd, "up, upward"; clivus, "a hill"] *Uphill; inclining* or *sloping upwards; ascending.*

accommŏdā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [accommod(a)-o, "to adapt"] With Dat. *or* ad: *Adapted to; appropriate,* or *suitable, to.*

ac-curro, curri *and* cŭcurri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [for adcurro; fr. ăd, "to"; curro, "to run"] With ad: *To run to* or *up to.*

ăc-ĭes, ĭēi, f. [AC, root of ac-ŭo, "to sharpen"] *Order* or *line, of battle.*

ācr-ĭter, adv. [ācer, acr-is, "sharp"] *Sharply, vigorously.*

ăd, prep. gov. acc.: *To, up to; on to; in the direction of. To* or *for. For the purpose of. According to, after.*

ad-aequo, aequāvi, aequātum, aequāre, 1. v. a. [ăd, "to"; aequo, "to make equal"] *To make equal to* in height; *to raise to a level with.*

ad-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead to* or *up. To draw,* or *pull, towards one. To excite, prompt, move, induce.*

ad-ĕo, ĭvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. [ad, "to"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go to.*

ăd-ĕo, adv. [prob. for ăd-ĕom; fr. ăd, "to *or* up to"; ĕom (=ĕum), old acc. of pron. is] *So, so much, so very.*

ăd-hĭbĕo, hibŭi, hĭbitum, hĭbēre, 2. v. a. [for ăd-hăbĕo; fr. ăd, "to"; hăbĕo, "to have *or* hold"] Of things: *To employ, use.*

ăd-huc, adv. [ad, "up to"]; huc (old form of hoc), "this"] Of time: *Up to this time, hitherto.*

ăd-ĭgo, ēgi, actum, ĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ăd-ăgo; fr. ăd, "to"; ago, "to drive"] Of piles: *To drive home, ram in.*

ădĭ-tus, tūs, m. [ădĕo, "to go to," ad "to": ire "to go."] *Means of approach, access.*

ad-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-jăcio; fr. ăd "to"; jăcio, "to cast"] [ăd, "in addition"] *To add. To cast* or *throw, upon.*

ad-jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; jungo, "to join"] *To annex,*

ad-mĭnistro, ministrāvi, ministrātum, ministrāre, 1. v. a. [ăd, "to"; ministro, "to act the part of a minister or servant"] *To execute, carry out, perform,*

ad-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; mitto, "to allow to go"] Of a crime, *etc.*: *To become guilty of*; *to commit, perpetrate.*

ad-mŏdum, adv. [ad, "according to"; mŏdum, acc. of mŏdus, "measure"] *Exceedingly, very.*

ădŏlesc-ens, entis, comm. gen. [P. pres. and pa. of adolesc-o, "to grow up," used as Subst.] *A young person* of either sex; *a youth.*

ădŏlescent-ŭlus, ŭli, m. dim. [adolescens, adolescent-is] *A mere youth*; *quite a young man.*

ăd-ŏrior, ortus sum, ŏrīri, 4. v. dep. [ăd, "against"; ŏrior, "to rise"] *To attack, assault, assail.*

adven-tus, tūs, m. [ad, "to"; venio, "to come"] *Arrival.*

adver-sus, sa, sum, adj. [for advertsus, fr. advert-o, "to turn towards"] Of locality: With Dat. *Over against, opposite to, fronting.*

adver-sus, prep. gov. acc. [ad, "towards"; versus, "turned"] In hostile sense: *Against.*

ad-verto, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to,"; verto, "to turn"] *To turn to* or *towards*: animum advĕrtere, *to turn the mind to* a thing, i.e. *to perceive, observe.*

aedifĭc-ĭum, ĭi, n. [aedifĭc-o] *A building* of any kind.

aedifĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre. 1. v. a. [for aed-i-fac-o, fr. aed-es, "an abode"; (i) connecting vowel; FAC, root of făc-io, "to make"] *To build, construct*: at ch 9, applied to ships.

aegr-e, adv. [aeger, aegr-i, "ill," "sick"] *With difficulty.*

aequ-ĭ-noct-ĭum, ĭi, n. [aequ-us, "equal"; (i) connecting vowel; nox, noct-is, "night."] *The equinox.*

aequus, a, um, adj. *Favourable, advantageous.*

aer-ārĭus, āria, ārium, adj. [aes, aer-is, "copper"] *Of copper*; *copper.*

aes, aeris, n. *Bronze, copper.*

aes-tas, tātis, f. *Summer* [root IDH, "to burn": cp. αἰθήρ, αἴθω; aedes, aestus].

aes-tĭmo, tĭmāvi, tĭmātum, tĭmāre, 1. v. a. [prob. for aertĭmo; fr. aes, aer-is, "money"] *To estimate, reckon.*

aestŭ-ārĭum, ārii, n. [aestus, uncontr. Gen. aestŭ-is, see aestas] *A part of the coast which the sea alternately covers and leaves*; *a salt-marsh. A creek, estuary.*

aes-tus, tūs, m. *The tide* [see aestas].

af-fīgo, fīxi, fixum, fīgere, 3. v. a. [for ad-fīgo; fr. ad, "to *or* on to"; fīgo, "to fix"] With Dat. *To fix to* or *on to*; *to fasten*, or *attach to.*

afflic-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [for afflig-to; fr. afflig-o, "to damage"] *To greatly damage, shatter.*

af-flīgo, flixi, flictum, flīgĕre, 3. v a. [for ad-flīgo; fr. ăd, "to"; flīgo, "to dash *or* strike"] Of vessels: *To shatter, damage.*

ăger, ăgri, m. *A field, land*, whether arable *or* pasture [root AG, "to drive": first applied to driven cattle; then to whom they were driven: cp. Gk. ἀγρός; Goth., *akrs*; German, *acker*; English, *acre.*]

agger, ĕris, m. [ad, "to"; gero, "to carry"] *A mound* raised for military purposes.

ag-grĕgo, grĕgāvi, grĕgātum, grĕgāre, 1. v. a. [for ad-grĕgo; fr. ăd, "to"; grex, grĕg-is, "a flock"] *To attach one's self*, etc., to.

ag-men, mĭnis, n. *The march*, or *passage*, of an army. *An army* on the march; *a column* advancing.

ăgo, ēgi, actum, ăgĕre, 3. v. a. Of military engines: *To bring forward, advance.* Of mines: *To push forward, drive.* Of actions in general: *To do, perform, undertake.* Of war, *etc.*: *To conduct, carry on, wage* [see ager.]

ăgr-ĭ-cul-tūra, tūrae, f. [for ăgr-i-coltūra; fr. ăger, ăgr-i; (i) connecting vowel; cŏl-o, "to till"] *A tilling of the land*; *tillage, agriculture.*

ălăcer, cris, cre, adj. *Quick, forward, prompt, eager.*

ălăcr-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [ălăcer, ălăcr-is,] "quick, active"] *Alacrity, ardour.*

ălĭ-as, adv. [ălĭ-us] *At another time*: ălias . . ălias, *at one time* . . *at another time*; *now* . . *now.*

ălĭ-ēnus, ēna, ēnum, adj. [ălĭ-us, "another"] *Belonging to another. Unfavourable, unsuitable* [ălius, "another"].

ălĭquant-o, adv. [aliquantus, "some"] With comparative words (the force depending on the context): *Somewhat*; *considerably, much*; *a little.*

ălĭ-qui, qua, quod (Gen.: ălĭcūjus; Dat.: ălĭcui; Plur.: ali-qui, quae, qua), indef. pron. adj. [ălĭ-us; qui (indefinite pron.), "any"] *Some.*

ălĭ-quis, quid (Gen.: ălĭcūjus; Dat.: ălĭcui; Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur, not used), indef. pron. subst. [ălĭ-us; quis] *Some one, somebody*; *something.* Neut.

with Gen. of 1st or 2nd decl.: *Something of = some.*

ălĭ-quot, indef. num. adj. indecl. [ălĭ-us; quot, "as many"] *Some, several.*

ăl-ĭter, adv. [ăl-is, old form of ăl-ĭus *In another manner, otherwise.*

ăl-ĭus, ĭa, ĭud (Gen.: ălĭus; Dat.; ălĭi), adj.: *Another, other*, of many: ălĭus.. ălĭus, *one..another*: alius..atque (ac), *othe...than, different..from*. As Subst.: **ălĭi**, ōrum, m. plur. *Other persons, others*: ălĭi..ălĭi, *some..others. Of another nature, different* [akin to ἄλ-λος].

ăl-o, ŭi, ĭtum *and* tum, ĕre, 3. v. a.: *To nourish, maintain. To foster, cherish*, root AL or OL, "to grow": cp. ad-olesco: sub-ol-esco; Greek ἄλθω].

al-ter, tĕra, tĕrum (Gen.; altĕrĭus: Dat.: altĕri), adj. *The other* of two: alter..alter, *the one..the other* [see alius].

alt-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [alt-us, "high"] *Height.*

altum, i; see altus.

al-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăl-o, "to nourish"] *High, lofty. Deep.* — As Subst.: **altum**, i. n. *The deep; the main* or *open sea* [see alo for root].

ălūta, ae, f. *Aluta*; a description of *leather* softened by some process; *a dressed skin.*

ămīc-ĭtia, ĭtĭae, f. [ămīc-us, "a friend"] *Friendship.*

ăm-īcus, īca, īcum, adj. [am-o] *Loving, friendly, kind.* As Subst.: **ămīcus**, i. m. *A friend.*

ā-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [ā, "from"; mitto, "to let go"] *To let go from one; to let slip. To lose.*

ampl-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [ampl-us, "ample"] *Extent, size.*

amplĭus, comp. adverb [adverbial neut. sing. of amplior, comp. of amplus] Of time: *More, longer, further.* Of number: *More, beyond*: non amplius octingentos equites, *eight hundred cavalry, no more*, i.e. *not more than eight hundred cavalry.*

am-pl-us, a, um, adj. [am, "around"; pl-ĕo, "to fill"] *Ample, extensive. Noble, distinguished, illustrious.*

an, conj. [prob. a primitive word] Introducing the second half of a disjunctive sentence: *Or*: an..an, *whether..or*; see, also, ne.

ancŏra, ae. f. *An anchor*: in ancoris, *at anchor* [root ANK, "to bend"; cp. angulus, ἀγκών].

angust-ĭae, ĭārum, f. plur. [angustus, "narrow"; hence, "critical, difficult." *Difficulties, critical circumstances, perplexities.*

ănĭm-adverto, adverti, adversum, advertĕre, 3. v. a. [ănĭmus, "the mind"; adverto (ăd, "towards"; verto, "to turn"), "to turn towards"] *To perceive, observe.*

ăn-ĭmus, ĭmi, m. *Mind, intellect. Disposition, character. Courage, spirit* [akin to root AN, "to breathe": cp. ἄνεμος: anima].

an-nus, ni, m. *A year* [akin to Sans. root AM, "to go"]

ante, adv. *and* prep.: Ad.: *Before, previously.* Prep. gov. acc.: *Before.*

ant-ĕā, adv. [prob. for anteam; fr. ant-e, "before"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is "this, that"] *Formerly, previously, once, etc.*

antĕ-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [ante, "before," cēdo, "to go"] *To go on forward, precede.*

antenna, ae, f. *A sailyard* [akin to ἀνατείνω, "to extend"].

antĕ-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [ante, "before"; pōno, "to put"] *To put* or *place, before; to take precedence of.*

ăper-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăpĕrĭo, "to uncover"] *Open, wide, extensive.*

ap-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-pello; fr. ăd, "to *or* towards"; pello, "to drive *or* move"] Of a ship: *To bring up to* a spot.

ap-pello, pellavi, pellātum, pellāre, 1. v. a. *To address, accost.* With second acc. *To call* a person something.

ap-prŏpinquo, prŏpinquāvi, prŏpinquātum, prŏpinquāre, 1. v. n. [for ad-prŏpinquo: fr. ăd, "to"; prŏpinquo, "to draw near"] With Dat.: *To draw near to, approach.*

ap-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăp-ĭo *or* ăp-o, "to lay hold of"] *Suited, fitted, fit, suitable.*

ăp-ud, prep. gov. acc. [pron. ăp-o, "to lay hold of"] *With amongst.*

ăqu-a, ae, f. *Water* [akin to Sans. *ap*, "water"].

ăquā-tĭo, tĭōnis, f. [see **aqua**] *A fetching of water; a watering.*

ăquĭ-la, lae, f. *An eagle* [akin to Gr. ὠκ-ύς, "swift"; Sans. *âsu*, "quickly"].

arbĭtr-or, ātus, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [arbiter, arbitr-i, "an umpire"] *To hold as true* in one's mind; *to suppose, deem, consider, regard, think.*

arbor, ŏris, f. [root AR, or AL, "high"] *A tree.*

ar-ces-so, sīvi, sītum, sĕre, 3. v. a. [for ar-ced-so; fr. ar = ad, "to,"; cēd-o, "to go"] *To call, summon, send for.*

ăr-ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [ār-ĕo, "to be dry"] *Dry.* As Subst.: **ārĭdum**, i, n. *Dry land.*

ar-ma, mōrum, n. plu. *Arms, weapons.* [root AR, "to fit" cp. armus, articulus, artus: ἄρθρον, ἀριθμός, ἀραρίσκω].

armā-menta, mentōrum, n. plur. [arm(a)-o, "to equip"] *See* arma. Of a ship: *Tackling,* i.e. rigging, sails, cables.

armātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of armo.—As Subst.: **armāti**, ōrum, m. plur. *Armed men.*

arm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [arm-a] *To furnish with arms* or *weapons*; *to arm.*

art-e, adv. [art-us, "close"] *Closely.*

ascī-sco, vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. a. inch. [ascī-o, "to take to one's self knowingly; to admit"] *To take to one's self*; *to unite, join,* etc.

assŭē-făcio, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. [assue-sco, "to accustom"; facio, "to make"] *To make accustomed, accustom, habituate.*

ăt, conj. *But* [akin to Gr. ἀτ-άρ, "but"].

at-que (ac), conj. [for ad-que; fr. ăd, "in condition"; quĕ, "and"] *And also*; *and.* With comparative adjectives, or words expressing dissimilarity, difference, contrariety: *Than.*

at-tingo, tĭgi, tactum, tingĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-tango; fr. ăd, "against"; tango, "to touch"] *To touch on, border upon*; *arrive at, come to,* a place.

at-trĭbŭo, tribŭi, tribūtum, tribŭĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-tribŭo; fr. ad, "to"; trĭbŭo, "to give"] *To give,* or *assign, to.*

auc-tor, tōris, m. [for augtor; fr. aug-ĕo, "to produce"] *An originator, author.*

auctōr-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [auctor] *Weight* of character, *influence, authority.*

audac-ter, adv. [audax, audăc-is, "bold"] *Boldly.*

audĕo, ausus, sum, audēre, 2. v. semi-dep. *To dare,* or *venture,* to do something.

aud-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. ("To give ear to"; hence) *To hear* [akin to αὖς (= οὖς) αὐτός, "ear"].

audī-tio, tiōnis, f. [audī-o] ("A hearing"; hence) *Hearsay, rumour.*

augĕo, auxi, auctum, augēre, 2. v. a. *To increase, augment* [akin to αὐξάνω].

aur-īga, īgae, m. [prob. aurea, "a head stall"] *A driver, charioteer.*

aut, conj. *Or*: aut...aut, *either...or.*

aut-em, conj. *But on the other hand. Besides, further, moreover* [akin to αὐτ-άρ].

auxĭliār-es, ium, m. plur. [auxĭliār-is, "pertaining to help"] *Auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

auxĭl-ĭor, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [auxili-um] *To give aid* or *assistance*; *to help, assist.*

auxĭl-ĭum, ii, n. [prob. fr. obsol. adj. auxil-is (= aug-sil-is fr. aug-ĕo), "increasing"] *Help, aid, assistance, succour*: auxilium ferre, *to bring help* or *succour.* Plur.: *Auxiliary troops* or *forces*; *auxiliaries.*

ă-vi-s, is, f. *A bird* [akin to Sans. *vi*, "a bird"; a is a prefix].

ăvus, i, m. *A grandfather.*

B.

barbărus, i, m. *A barbarian.*

bellic-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [bellic-us, "warlike"] *Very warlike, martial.*

bell-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [bell-um] *To wage,* or *carry on, war*; *to war.*

b-ellum, elli, n. [old form dŭ-ellum; fr. du-o, "two"] *War, warfare.*

bĕn-e, adv. [ben-us = bŏnus] *Well, successfully, to advantage, favourably.* Comp.: mĕlius; *Sup.*: optime.

bī-ni, nae, na, num. distributive adj plur. [bi = bis, "twice"] *Two, a pair of.*

bī-pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [bī (= bis), "twice"; pes. pĕd-is, "a foot," as a measure] *Two feet thick, broad,* or *long.*

bis, num. adv. [for du-is; fr. dŭ-o, "two"] *Twice.*

brĕv-is, e, adj. *Short.* Adverbial Abl., brĕvi, *In a short.*

C.

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, cădĕre, 3. v. n.: [root CAD, "to fall": cp. casus, κατά] *To fall, fall down. To fall dead, die.*

caedo, cĕcīdi, caesum, caedĕre, 3. v. a. [cădo, "to fall," in causative force] *To cut, to cut* or *hew down.*

caes-pe-s, pĭtis, m. [prob. for caed-pet-s; fr. caed-o, "to cut"; pĕt-o, "to seek"] *A turf, sod.*

călămĭtas, ātis, f. [perhaps for cad-amitas: from cado "to fall"]. *Misfortune, calamity.*

call ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [call-ĕo, "to know by experience"] *Skilful, dexterous. Cunning, crafty.*

campus, i. m. *A plain* [root SKAP, "to dig": cp. σκάπτειν, σκαφή; scabo].

căpĭo, cēpi, captum, căpĕre, 3. v. a.: *To take*, in the widest sense of the word. Of arms: *To take up*. Of a place: *To reach, arrive at*, esp. by ship. *To take by force of arms, seize*. Of a plan: *To form, to adopt*.

cap-tīvus, tīvi, m. [căp-ĭo, "to take in war"] *A prisoner, captive*.

cap-tus, tūs, m. [căp-ĭo, "to take with the mind, to comprehend"] *Notion, view*.

căp-ut, ĭtis, n.: [cp. κεφαλή: Gothic haubith; German, haupt]. *The head. A person, a man*. Of rivers: *The mouth, embouchure*.

cărīna, ae, f. [KAR, "to be hard": cp. κάρυον, "a nut": calx, calculus, carbo] *The keel*, or *bottom*, of a vessel.

carp-o, si, tum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To find fault with, censure, carp at* [akin to ἁρπάζω, "to seize"].

carrus, i. m. A two-wheeled *cart* for heavy loads.

castel-lum, li, n. dim. [for caster-lum; fr. castrum, cast(e)ri] *A small fort; a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold*.

castra, ōrum; see castrum.

cas-trum, tri, n. [probably for skad-trum; akin to root SKAD, "to cover": cp. casa = skadsa; German, schatten; Eng., *shade, shadow*]. Sing.: *A fortified place; a fortress, stronghold*. Plur.: **castra**, ōrum, *a camp* or *encampment*, as containing several soldiers' tents or huts.

cā-sus, sūs, m. [for cad-sus; fr. căd-o, "to fall out, happen"] *Chance, accident. Mishap, misfortune, calamity*.

cătēna, ae, f. *A chain; fetter*.

causa, ae, f. *A cause, reason*. Adverbial Abl.: With Gen. or Gerund in di: *For the purpose of; on account of*.

cau-tes, tis, f. *A sharp rock; a crag* [akin to root KO, "to sharpen," κῶνος, cos, catus], "to sharpen"].

cĕl-er, ĕris, ĕre, adj. [CEL, root of cello, "to urge on"] *Swift, rapid, quick*.

cĕlĕr-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [celer, "swift"] *Swiftness, speed, celerity*.

cĕlĕr-ĭter, adv. [id.] *Swiftly, speedily, quickly*.

centum, num, adj. indecl. *A hundred* [akin to Gr. ἑκατον].

centŭrĭ-o, ōnis, m. [centŭrĭ-a, "a century" or division of troops in the Roman armies] *A centurion*.

certā-men, mĭnis, n. [cert(a)-o, "to contend"] *A contest*.

cert-e. adv. [cert-us] *Surely, assuredly*.

cer-tus, ta, tum, adj. [fr. CER-, root of cer-no, "to decide"] *Sure, certain*. Phrase: Certior fĭĕri, (*to be made very sure* or *certain*, i.e.) *to be informed*.

c-ētĕri, ētĕrae, ētĕra, adj. plur. (rare in sing.) *The other, the rest; the remaining* or *remainder of*.

cĭbārĭ-a, ōrum, n, plu. [cĭbārĭ-us, "pertaining to food"] *Provisions, victuals, food*.

cĭbus, i, m.; *food*.

circ-ĭter, adv. [circ-us, "a circle"] Of number: *About, near, nearly*.

circŭ-ĕo, ivi *or* ii, ĭtum, ire, v. a. irreg. [for circum-ĕo; fr. circum, "round"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go round*.

circum-do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1. v. a. [circum, "around"; do, "to put"] *To surround, inclose*.

circum-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [circum, "round"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead round*.

circumsisto, stĕti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [circum, "around"; sisto, "to stand"] *To stand around*.

circum-sto, stĕti, no sup., stāre, 1. v. a. [circum, "around"; sto, "to stand"] Of a vessel: *To surround* in a hostile manner; *to attack assail*.

circum-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. a. [circum, "around"; vĕnĭo, "to come"] With accessory notion of hostility: *To surround, beset*.

cis, prep. gov. acc. *On this side of*.

cĭtā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [cit(a)-o, "to urge on"] *Rapid, swift, quick*. In adverbial force: *Rapidly, with rapid course*.

cĭt-o, adv. [cĭt-us, "rapid"] *Rapidly, swiftly*: citissime, *with the utmost rapidity*.

cĭ-ter, tra, trum, adj. [for cis-ter; fr. cis, "on this side"] *Being, or that is, on this side; hither*. Comp.: cĭtĕr-ĭor; (Sup.: cĭ-tĭmus for cis-tĭmus).

citr-a, prep. gov. acc. [cĭter, citr-i, "on this side"] *On this side of*.

cīv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [cīv-is, "a citizen"; root KI, "to dwell" *or* "to lie": κεῖμαι, κώμη; qui-es, A. S., *ha-m*; English, *home*]. *A state, commonwealth*.

clam, adv. *Secretly, privately, by stealth* [root KAL, "to cover": cp. καλύπτω, "to cover"; cĕl-o, "to hide"].

clām-or, ōris, m. [clām-o, "to cry out"] *Outcry, clamour; a shout*.

classis, is, f. Of persons summoned for the sea service: *A fleet* comprising the ships as well as the men serving in them [κλᾶσις = κλῆσις, "a calling"].

clau-do, si, sum, dĕre, 3. v. a. *To shut, close* [akin to κλεί-ω, "to shut"].

clāvus [akin to root SKLU, "to shut" or "close": cp. claudo, clavis; κλείς, κλείω]. *A peg, nail, spike.*

clī-ens, entis, comm. gen. [for clu-ens, which is also found; fr. clŭ-ĕo, "to hear"] *A dependant, adherent.*

coep-i (pres. coepio, *etc.*, ante-classical) isse, v. def. a. *and* n. [contr. fr. co-ap-io; fr. co. (=cum) in "intensive" force; ăp-io, to lay hold of] *To begin.*

cōg-ĭto, ĭtāvi, ĭtātum, ĭtāre, 1. v. a. [contr. fr. cŏ-ăgito: fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ăgito, "to revolve," *etc.*, in the mind] *To revolve thoroughly; to weigh* or *ponder well; to think. To plan, purpose, meditate.*

co-gnosco, gnōvi, gnĭtum, gnoscĕre, 3. v. a. [co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; gnosco (=nosco), "to become acquainted with"] *To become acquainted with, learn, ascertain.* In perf. tenses: *To have knowledge of, to know.*

cōgo, cŏēgi, cŏactum, cōgĕre, 3. v. a. [contracted fr. co-ăgo; fr. co (=cum), "together"; ăgo, "to drive," *etc.*] *To bring together, collect, assemble.*

cŏhors, tis, f. [Gk. χορτός, "an enclosed space": Latin. *hortus*: English, *yard.*] *A cohort*; the tenth part of a Roman legion.

cŏ-hortor, hortātus sum, hortāri, 1. v. dep. [co (=cum), in "strengthening" force; hortor, "to exhort"] *To exhort; to encourage, animate.*

col-lĭgo, lēgi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-lĕgo; fr. con (=cum) "together"; lĕgo, "to gather"] *To gather together; to collect, assemble, form in a body.* With Personal pron. plur. in reflexive force: *to collect,* or *mass, together.*

collis, is, m. [root CEL, "high": cp. celsus, columna; κολώνη] *A hill.*

col-lŏco, lŏcāvi, lŏcātum, lŏcāre, 1. v. a. [for con-lŏco; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; lŏco, "to place"] *To put, place,* or *station* any where. Of affairs, *etc.*: *To put in order, arrange.*

col-lŏquor, lŏqūtus sum, lŏqui, 3. v. dep. [for con-lŏquor; fr. con (=cum), "together"; lŏquor, "to talk"] *To talk together* or *with* a person; *to hold a conference, confer with.*

commĕā-tus, tūs, m. [commĕ(a)-o, "to go to and fro"] *Provisions, supplies*

com-mĕmŏro, mĕmŏrāvi, mĕmŏrātum, mĕmŏrāre, 1. v. a. [for commando; [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mĕmŏro, "to mention"] *To make mention of, recount, relate.*

com-mendo, mendāvi, mendātum, mendāre, 1. v. a. [for commendo; fr. com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mando, "to commit"] *To commit,* or *intrust,* for protection.

commīlĭt-o, ōnis, m. [commilit-o, "to serve with another as a soldier"] *A fellow soldier, comrade.*

com-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; mitto, "to cause to go"] Of battle: *To engage in commerce.* With Dat.: *To trust, intrust.*

commŏd-e, adv. [commŏd-us, "advantageous"] *Advantageously, favourably.*

commŏd-um, i, n. [commŏd-us, "advantageous"] *An advantage, interest.*

com-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mŏvĕo, "to move"] *To disturb, agitate, disquiet, rouse.*

commūn-ĭco, ĭcāvi, ĭcātum, ĭcāre, 1. v. a. [commūn-is, "common"] *To share, to impart.*

com-mūnis, mūne, adj. [com, "together"; mūnis, "serving"] *Common, joint.*

com-mūto, mūtāvi, mutātum, mūtāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mūto, "to change"] *To change* or *alter* wholly or entirely.

com-păro, părāvi, părātum, părāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; păro, "to bring or put"] *To make ready, prepare. To get together, get ready, equip.*

com-pĕr-io, i, tum, īre, 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; root PER, akin to per-ior, "to pass through"] *To find out accurately; to ascertain, learn.*

com-plĕo, plēvi, plētum, plēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plĕo, "to fill"]. *To fill completely* or *entirely.* Of ditches. *To fill up.*

com-plūres, plūra (and, sometimes, plūria), adj. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plūres, "very many"] *Very many, several.* As Subst.: *Very many, several.* As Subst.: *Very many persons or men.*

com-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry together; convey, collect.*

com-prĕhendo, prĕhendi, prĕhensum, prĕhendĕre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; prĕhendo, "to lay hold of"] *To seize, grapple.*

con cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cēdo, "to yield"] *To grant, allow, yield, concede.* Impers. pass.: Concessum est, *It was conceded.* *To give* or *yield, up.*

con-cĭdo, cĭdi, no sup., cĭdĕre, 3. v. n. [for con-cădo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cădo, "to fall"] *To fall*, or *tumble, down.*

con-cīdo, cīdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-caedo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force: caedo, "to cut"] *To cut up, destroy.*

con-cĭl-ium, ii, n. [for con-căl-ium; fr. con (=cum), "together"; căl-o, "to call"] *A meeting, assembly, council.*

con-clāmo, clāmāvi, clāmātum, clāmāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; clāmo, "to cry out"] *To cry out together; to shout unanimously.*

con-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; clūdo (=claudo), "to shut" *To shut completely; to close, confine.*

concurro, curri, (rarely cŭcurri), currĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum, "together"; curro, to run"] *To run together* or *in a body.*

concursus, ūs, m. [con, "together" curro, "to run"] *An attack.*

cond-ĭtio, itiōnis, f. [cond-o, "to put together"] *State*, or *condition*, of a person. *An agreement, compact, terms.*

confertus, a, um, adj; *crowded*

confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre, v. a. irreg. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, carry, convey.* With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To betake one's self.*

confestim, adv.; *immediately.*

con-fĭcio, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [con-făcio; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; facio, "to do or make"] Of skins: *To prepare.* *To finish, complete, settle, put an end to.* *To weaken, disable*

con-fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre, 3. v. n. *and* a. semi-dep. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; fīdo, "to trust"] Neut.: with Abl.: *To trust to, rely upon, have confidence in.* Acc.: With Objective clause: *To be persuaded*, or *confident, that.*

con-fīgo, fixi, fixum, figĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; figo, "to fix"] *To join* or *fasten, together.*

confirmā-tio, tiōnis, f. [confirm(a)-o] *A confirming* or *verifying*, of a matter.

con-firm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; firm-us, "strong"] Of an opinion, *etc.*: *To strengthen, establish, confirm.*

confluens, tis; [con, "together"; fluo, "to flow"]. Of rivers: *the confluence.*

con-grĕdior, gressus sum, -grĕdi, v. dep. [con, "together": grădior, "to go"] *To encounter.*

congres-sus, sūs, m. [for congred-sus; fr. congred-ior, "to contend"] *A contest, fight, encounter.*

con-jĭcio, jēci, jectum, jicĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-jăcio; fr. con (=cum): jăcio, "to cast"] [con, "together"] With in c. acc.: *To station in a body in* a place, [con, in "augmentative" force] Of weapons: *To hurl, throw, cast.* Of persons: *To throw* into prison; *to put* in fetters. With in fugam: *To rout and put to flight.*

con-jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕrĕ, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; jungo, "to join"] *To join together, unite.*

conjūrā-tio, tiōnis, f. [conjur(a)o] *Confederacy, union, combination.*

con-jūro, jūrāvi, jūrātum, jūrāre, 1. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; jūro, "to swear"] *To enter into a confederacy; to unite, combine.*

cōn-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. *To endeavour, try, attempt.*

con-scendo, scendi, scensum, scendĕre, 3. v. a. [con, "together"; scendo, "to climb"] *To embark.*

con-scisco, scivi, scitum, sciscĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; scisco, "to decree"] With mortem sibi, (*To decree death to one's self*; i.e.) *To kill* or *destroy one's self.*

con-sector, sectātus sum, sectāri, 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sector, "to follow after"] *To follow after* or *pursue eagerly*, etc.

con-sĕquor, sĕquūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sĕquor, "to follow"] In time: *To follow, come after* or *on.* In a hostile sense: *To pursue.*

con-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; servo, "to keep"] *To keep thoroughly, observe strictly* the law.

con-sīdo, sēdi, sessum, sidĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; sido, "to sit down"] Of troops, *To take one's station; to encamp.*

consilium, ii, n: *A plan, purpose,*

design. Prudence, discretion. An assembly; a council of war.

con-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sisto, "to set one's self," *i.e.* "to stand"] *To take one's stand; to remain, stand still.* Of troops, *etc.*: *To take up a position*, etc.; *to stand.* Of vessels: *To take up a station.* Of hope; With in c. abl.: *To consist in, depend upon.*

conspec-tus, tūs, m. [conspic-io; con, "together": specio, "to see"]. *Sight, view*: in conspectu, *before the eyes*, or *in the presence*, of some one.

con-spicio, spexi, spectum, spicĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-spĕcio; fr. con (=cum), "in" augmentative" force; spĕcio, "to see"] *To see, behold, observe.*

con-spiro, spirāvi, spirātum, spirāre, 1. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; spiro, "to blow"] In a bad sense: *To plot together, enter into a conspiracy, conspire.*

constan-ter, adv. [for constant-ter; fr. constans, constantis, "firm"] *Firmly, steadily, steadfastly.*

con-sterno, strāvi, strātum, sternĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sterno, "to strew"] *To strew over* with something; *to cover* by strewing.

con-stitŭo, stitŭi, stitūtum, stitŭĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-statuo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; statuo, "to place or set"] *To appoint, fix.* With Inf.: *To resolve, determine, decide. To agree*, or *determine, upon*, something.

con-sto, stiti, stātum, stāre, 1. v. n. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sto, "to stand"] Of facts, reports: *To be established, certain, clear, evident.* Impers.: **constabat**, *It was evident.*

consŭē-sco, vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. n. inch. [con-sŭē-o, "to be accustomed"] *To accustom one's self*:—in perf. tenses *to have accustomed one's self*, i.e. *to be accustomed* or *wont.*

consŭē-tūdo, tūdĭnis, f. [for consuet-tūdo, fr. consuēt-us, "accustomed"] *Custom, habit, use, usage.*

consul, ŭlis, m. *A consul*; one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

con-sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, sūmĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; sūmo, "to take"] *To spend* time.

contem-ptio, ptiōnis, f. [for contemn-ptio; fr. contemn-o, "to despise"] *A despising; contempt, scorn.*

con-tendo, tendi, tentum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tendo, "to stretch"] *To make an effort* or *endeavour; to exert one's self, endeavour.* With accessory notion of hostility: *To strive, contend, struggle*, etc. [tendo, "to bend one's way"] *To bend one's way*, or *proceed, eagerly.*

con-testor, testātus sum, testāri, 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; testor, "to call to witness"] *To call to witness, invoke* the gods.

con-texo, texŭi, textum, texĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; texo, "to weave"] *To connect, unite.*

contĭnens, ntis: P. pres. of contĭnĕo. Pa.: *Adjacent, neighbouring, close at hand, contiguous.*

contĭnen-ter, adv. [for continent-ter, fr. contĭnens, continentis, "continuous"] In time: *Continuously, without interruption.*

con-tĭnĕo, tinŭi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for con-tĕnĕo; fr. con (=cum), "together"; tenĕo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep together.* Of places: In Pass.: *To be surrounded, encompassed*, or *enclosed by. To keep* any where. *To keep*, or *retain* in allegiance.

contĭnŭā-tio, tiōnis, f. [contĭnŭ(a)-o, "to continue"] *Continuation, uninterrupted succession.*

contĭn-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. [contin-ĕo, "to hold together"] Of time: *Successive, in succession.*

contrā, prep. gov. acc.: Of place: *Over against, opposite. Against, contrary to* expectation.

con-trăho, traxi, tractum, trahĕre, 3. v. a [con, "together"; trăho, "to draw"] *To draw*, or *bring, together; to collect, assemble.*

contrā-rius, ria, rium, adj. [contra] *Opposite, contrary.* With Dat.: *Over, against, opposite to.*

contŭmēl-ia, iae, f. [obsol. adj. contŭmēl-us, "swelling greatly"; fr. con. (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tŭmĕ-o, "to swell" *Detriment, injury, damage.*

con-vallis, vallis, f. [con (=cum), "together"; vallis, "a valley"] *A valley enclosed on all sides.*

con-vĕnio, vēni, ventum, vĕnire, 4. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"] venio, "to come"] *To come together, assemble.*

con-verto, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; verto, "to turn"] *To turn* or *turn round.* Pass. with ad, *To be turned towards*, i.e. *to be directly opposite* or *facing.*

con-vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, vŏcāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; vōco, "to call"] *To call together; to convene, convoke.*

co-ŏrĭor, ortus sum, ŏrīri, 3. *and* 4. v. dep. [co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ŏrĭor, "to rise"] Of war: *To rise, break forth.*

cō-p-ĭa, ĭae, f. [contr. fr. co-opia; fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ops, ŏp-is, "means." *Copiousness, plenty.* Plur.: *Forces, troops.*

cō-p-ŭla, ŭlae, f. [contr. fr. co-ap-ula; fr. co (=cum), "together"; ăp-ĭo, "to join"] *A band, rope. A grapnel.*

cŏrōna, ae, f. [root KUR, "to bend": cp. κύκλος, curvus]. *A garland, wreath,* or *chaplet* of flowers, *etc.*: sub coronā vendere, *to sell* (captives) *as slaves,* as they were crowned, at the sale, like an animal for sacrifice.

corp-us, ŏris, n. [root KAR, "to make": cp. κραίνω [illegible] creo, Ceres] *The body.*

crass-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [crass-us, "thick"] *Thickness.*

crāt-es, ium, f. *Wicker-work, a hurdle.* Plur.: *Fascines.*

crē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. *To put faith in; to believe; to admit,* or *hold, as true.*

crŭcĭā-tus, tūs. m. [cruci(a)-o, "to torture"] *Torture.*

culp-a, ae, f. ["A deed, action": hence, in a bad sense] *A crime, fault.*

cul-men, mĭnis, n. [see collis] Of a mountain: *The highest point; the peak, summit.*

cum, prep. gov. abl. *With*: written after Personal pronouns: *e.g.* secum [akin to. Gk. ξύν, σὺν].

cunctā-tĭo, tiōnis, f [cunct(a)-or] *Delay, hesitation.*

cunc-tor, tātus sum, tāri, 1. v. dep. *To delay, linger, hesitate*; non cunctandum (esse), *that it must not be delayed,* i.e. *that there must be no delay.*

cŭnicŭlus, i.m. ("A rabbit"; hence, from the burrowing of rabbits) Military t. t.: *A mine* [root KO, "to sharpen": cp. cautes].

cŭp-ĭo, īvi *or* ii, ītum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To desire; to be desirous of.*

cur, adv. [contr. fr. quā rē *or* cui rei] *For what reason; why; wherefore.*

cūr-o, āvi ātum āre, 1 v. a. [cūra, "care"] With the Acc. and Gerundive: *To take care, order,* or *cause that something be done.*

curr-us, ūs, m. [curr-o, "to run"] *A chariot, car.*

cur-sus, sūs, m. [for curr-sus; fr. curr-o, "to run"] *A running.*

custōdĭ-a, ae, f. [custōdĭ-o, "to guard"] Of persons keeping guard: *A guard, guarding force.*

D.

dē, prep. gov. abl.: *From, away from. Down from. Out of. With respect to, about, concerning.* Of a reason, *From, for.*

dĕc-em, num. adj. indecl. *Ten* [akin to, Gr. δέκ-α, "ten"].

dē-cerno, crēvi, crētum, cernĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; cerno, "to determine"] *To determine, decree, decide.*

dē-certo, certāvi, certātum, certāre, 1. v. n. [dē, in "strengthening" force; certo, "to contend"] *To contend,* or *fight, vigourously* or *earnestly.*

dēces-sus, sūs, m. [for dēced-sus; fr. dēcēd-o, "to depart"] Of the tide: *The subsiding* or *running out; the ebb.*

dĕc-ĭmus, ĭma, ĭmum, adj. num. adj. [dĕc-em, "ten"] *Tenth.*

dē-clīv-is, e, adj. [de, "down"; clivus, "sloping ground"] Of place: *Sloping, downward.*

Dĕcŭm-ānus (Dĕcĭm-), āna, ānum, adj. [dĕcĭm-a, "the tenth" cohort] *Of the tenth cohort; Decuman*: porta, *the Decuman gate,* the name of the main gate of the four in a Roman camp, given to it from the tenth cohorts of the legions being stationed near it.

dē-curro, cŭcurri *or* curri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [dē, "down"; curro, "to run"] *To run down.*

dē-dĕcus, dĕcŏris, n. [dē, in "negative" force; dĕcus, "that which is becoming"] *Disgrace, dishonour, shame.*

dēd-ĭtĭo, ĭtiōnis, f. [ded-o] *A surrendering, surrender, submission.*

dē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from"; do, "to put"] *To give up to one; to surrender.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To give one's self up* to another; *to yield, submit. To devote, dedicate,* etc.

dē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead* or *draw off, withdraw.*

dēfătīgā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [dēfatig(a)-o, "to weary out"] *Utter weariness* or *fatigue; exhaustion.*

dēfec-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [for dēfactio; fr dēfĭc-io, "to revolt,"] *A revolt.*

de-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from"; obsol. fendo, "to beat *or* strike"] *To protect, defend* [fendo is akin to Sans. root HAN, "to strike"].

dēfen-sor, sōris, m. [for defend-sor; fr. defend-o] *A defender.*

dē-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [dē, "down"; fĕro, "to bring"] *To bring*, or *carry, down.*

dēfessus, a, um, P. perf. of dēfĕtiscor. As. Subst.: **defessus**, i. m. *One wearied out* or *exhausted.*

dē-fĕtiscor, fessus sum, fĕtisci, 3. v. dep. inch. [for dēfatiscor; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; fātiscor, "to grow faint"] *To become quite faint* or *weary*: In perf. tenses: *to be quite faint* or *weary*; *to be wearied out* or *exhausted.*

dē-fĭcio, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. n. [for de-făcio; fr. dē, "away from"; făcio, "to make"] *To withdraw from allegiance*; *to revolt. To fail, fall short, be wanting.*

dē-fīgo, fixi, fixum, fīgĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "down"; fīgo, "to fix"] *To fix, fasten*, or *drive down.*

dē-form-is, e, adj. [dē, denoting "separation"; form-a, "shape"] *Misshapen, ill-shaped.*

dē-jĭcio, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for dējăcio; fr. de, "down"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To throw* or *cast down. To drive down, dislodge. To overthrow, destroy.*

deinceps, adv. [adverbial neut. of deinceps, "following"] Of time: *Successively, in succession.*

dē-inde, adv. [de, "from"; inde, "thence"] In time: *Thereafter, afterwards, after this, then.*

dēlec-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [for dēlac-to; fr. delic-io (through root LAC), "to allure away"; hence] *To delight, please.*

dē-lībĕro, lībĕrāvi, lībĕrātum, lībĕrāre, 1. v. a. [for dē-libro; fr. de, in "strengthening" force; libro, "to poise or weigh"] *To weigh well* in one's mind; *to ponder, consider, deliberate.*

dē-lĭgo, lēgi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for dē-lĕgo; fr. dē, out *or* out from"; lĕgo, "to choose"] *To choose out* from a number; *to select.*

dē-lĭgo, lĭgāvi, lĭgātum, lĭgāre, 1. v. a. [dē, "down"; ligo, "to bind"] *To bind down, to bind fast, fasten.*

dē-lĭtesco, lĭtui, no sup., lĭtescĕre, 3. v. n. [for dē lătesco; fr. dē, "away"; lātesco, "to hide one's self"] *To hide one's self away*; *to conceal one's self.*

dēment-ĭa, ĭae, f. [dēmens, dēment-is, "out of one's mind, mad"] *Madness, senselessness, folly.*

de-mĕto, messŭi, messum. mĕtĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "down"; meto, "to mow *or* reap"] *To mow, reap*, or *cut down.*

dē-mīgro, mīgrāvi, mīgrātum, mīgrāre, 1. v. n. [dē, "away"; migro, "to migrate"] *To migrate away* from a place; *to remove, depart, emigrate.*

dē-monstro, monstrāvi, monstrātum, monstrāre, 1. v. a. [dē, in "augmentative" force: monstro, "to show"] *To show, point out.* Impers.: demonstratum est, *it has been shown*

dē-mŏror, mŏrātus sum, mŏrāri, 1. v. dep. [dē, in "strengthening" force; mŏror, "to delay"] *To delay, hinder.*

densus, a, um, adj. [akin δασύς: denseo, dumus] *Thick, close, dense.*

dē-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive away.*

dē-perdo, perdĭdi, perdĭtum, perdĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, denoting "completeness"; perdo, "to lose"] *To lose entirely* or *completely.*

dē-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [de, "down"; pōno, "to put"] *To put* or *lay down* in a place; *to deposit*: deponere in silvas, *to convey into the woods and deposit there. To lay aside.*

de-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [dē, "away"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry away.*

dē-prĕcor, prĕcātus sum, prĕcāri, 1, v. dep. [dē, "away from"; prĕcor, "to pray"] *To avert* or *ward off*, by prayer or entreaty; *to deprecate.*

dē-rĕlinquo, rĕlīqui, rĕlictum, rĕlinquĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, denoting "completeness"; rĕlinquo, "to leave"] *To leave completely* or *altogether*; *to abandon, forsake, desert.*

dē-sīd-ĕro, ĕrāvi, ĕrātum, ĕrāre, 1. v. a. *To long for, earnestly wish for, desire. To miss* a thing [de, in "intensive" force; root SID, akin to Gr. εἰδ-εῖν, "to see or look at"].

dē-sĭlio, sĭlŭi, sultum, sĭlīre, 5. v. n. [for de-sălio; fr. dē, "down"; salio, "to leap"] *To leap down.*

dē-sisto, stĭti, stĭtum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [dē, "away from"; sisto, "to set one's self, stand"] *To leave off, give over, cease, desist.*

despec-tus, tūs, m. [despĭcio, "to look down upon"] *A view* or *prospect* from a higher ground.

dĕ-spēro, spērāvi, spērātum, spērāre, 1. v. n. dē, denoting "reversal"; spēro, "to hope"] *To give up*, or *lose, hope*; *to despair.*

de-spĭcĭo, spexi, spectum, spicĕre, 3. v. a. [for de-spĕcio; fr. dē, "down upon": spĕcio, "to look"] *To despise.*

dē-stĭ-no, nāvi, nātum, nāre, 1. v. a. [for de-sta-no; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; STA, root of sto, "to stand"] *To make fast, fasten, bind.*

dē-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [dē, "away from"; sum, "to be"] *To fail* or *be wanting.*

dē-tĭneo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for de-tĕnĕo; fr. dē, "off *or* away from"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, back, to detain.*

dē-trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3. v. a. [de, "away"; trăho, "to draw"] *To withdraw.*

dĕus, i (Nom. Plu., dii, ch. 7. m. *A god, deity* [akin to Gr. θεός, "a god"].

dēvōt-us, i, m. [dēvōt-us, "devoted, attached"] *A devoted, attached*, or *faithful adherent* or *retainer.*

dīco, dixi, dictum, dīcĕre, 3. v. a. [DIC, "to show": cp. δείκνυμι, δίκη; indico, index] *To speak, say, mention, report.* Pass.: *To be said, mentioned, reported.* Impers.: dicēbatur, *it was said or reported*; dictum est, *mention has been made.*

dī-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart"; dūco, "to lead"] Of troops: *To separate, divide.*

dies, ēi, m. (in sing. sometimes f.) *A day*: diebus paucsi, *in a few days* [root DIV, "bright": cp. divus, διFος; O. H. G. *Zio*].

diffĭcul-tas, tātis, f. [difficul, is, old form of diffĭcil-is, "difficult"] *Difficulty.*

dif-flŭo, no perf. nor sup., flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [for dis-flŭo; fr. dis, "in different directions", flŭo, "to flow"] *To flow in different directions.*

dĭg-ĭtus, ĭti, m. [see dico] *A finger* (see pollex).

dign-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [dign-us, "worthy"] *Dignity.*

dīligen-ter, adv. [for diligent-ter; fr. diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] *Diligently, carefully.* Comp.: diligent-ius.

dīligent-ia, iae, f. [diligens, diligent-is; see diligenter] *Diligence, carefulness, caution, attention.*

dīmensus, a, um, P. perf. of dimetior:—at ch. 17 in Pass. force: *Measured out, proportioned.*

dī-mētior, mensus sum, mētiri, 4. v. dep. [dī (=dis), "apart"; mētior, "to measure"] *To measure out, to proportion.*

dī-mĭco, mĭcāvi *or* mĭcŭi, mĭcātum, 1. v. n. [di (=dis), "greatly"; mĭco, "to move to and fro"] *To fight, combat.*

dis-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. for dis-jăcio; fr. dis, "asunder"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To disperse, separate, scatter.*

dī-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart"; mitto, "to send"] *To send about, in different directions*, or *to different parts. To send away; to let go, dismiss.*

dīrec-tus, ta, tum, adj.: P. perf. pass. of dirigo. Pa.: *Straight, direct, level.*

dī-rĭgo, rexi, rectum, rigĕre, 3. v. a. [for dī-rego; fr. dī (=dis), in "strengthening" force; rĕgo, "to keep, *or* lead, straight"] *To keep, put*, or *place straight*, or *in a straight line.*

dis-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [dis, "apart"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go away, depart.*

disces-sus, sūs, m. [for disced-sus; fr. discēd-o, "to depart"] *Departure.*

discĭpl-īna, īnae, f. [for disced-sus; fr. discĭpŭl-us, "a learner"] *Discipline.*

dis-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [dis, "apart"; clūdo (=claudo), "to shut"] *To keep apart* or *asunder.*

dī-spergo, spersi, spersum, spergĕre, 3. v. a. [for dispargo; fr. di (=dis), "in different directions"; spargo, "to scatter"] *To scatter in different directions; to disperse.*

dissĭmŭ-lo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for dissimil-o; fr. dissimil-is, "unlike"] *To feign*, that a thing is not that which it is; *to dissemble, disguise, conceal.*

dis-tĭnĕo, tinŭi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for dis-tĕnĕo; fr. dis, "apart", tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, apart.*

dī-sto, no perf. nor sup., stāre, 1. v. n. [di (=dis), "apart"; sto, "to stand"; *To stand*, or *be, apart; to be separate.*

dis-trĭbŭo, tribŭi, tribūtum, tribŭĕre, 3. v. a. [dis, "amongst several"; tribŭo, "to give"] *To divide out, distribute, assign.*

dĭu, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of obsol. dius (=dies), "a day"] ("By day"; hence) *For a long time; a long while.* Comp.: *Longer.*

diūturn-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [diūturn-us, "of long duration"] *Long duration or continuance; length.*

dī-vĭdo, visi, visum, vidĕre, 3. v. a. ("To part asunder"; hence) *To divide, separate*, etc. Pass.: di (=dis), "apart";

root VID, "to separate": cp. viduus, vidua: English, *widow*].

do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1. v. a. *To give*, in the fullest sense of the word; *to grant*. *To put*, *place*, *cast* somewhere: dare in fugam, *to put to flight*.

dŏc-ĕo, ŭi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. [akin to dic-o] *To teach*, *instruct*, *inform*, *show*, *tell*, etc.

dŏl-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. Mentally: With objective clause: *To grieve*, *deplore*, *lament*.

dŏl-us, i, m. *Craft*, *fraud*, *guile*, *deceit* [δόλος].

dŏmi, dŏmum; see domus.

dŏmus, i, *and* ūs, f. [root DOM, "to build": cp. δέμω, δόμος; Goth., *timrjan*; O.H.G., *zimmer*; Saxon, *timber*] *A dwelling-house*, *abode*. Adverbial. Gen. of place: **dŏmi**, *At home*. Abl. of place "whence": **domo**, *From home*. After verbs of motion, **dŏmum**, *To the house*, *home*, *homewards* [Gr. δόμος].

dŭ-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [dŭ-o, "two"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Two hundred*.

dūc-o, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. *To lead*, *conduct*. *To think*, *consider*.

dum, conj. [akin to diu] *While*, *whilst*, *during the time that*. *Until*.

dŭo, ae, v. (Gen. plur. duūm), num. adj. *Two* [Gr. δύο].

dŭŏ-dĕcim, num. adj. [for dŭŏdĕcem; fr. dŭo, "two"; dĕcem, "ten"; *Twelve*.

dŭŏ-dĕcim-us, a, um, num. ord. adj. [dŭŏdĕcim] *Twelfth*.

dŭ-plex, plĭcis, adj. [for duplic-s; fr. dŭo, "two"; plico, "to fold"] *Twofold*, *double*.

dŭplĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [duplex, duplic-is, "double" *To double*.

duum; see duo.

dux, dŭcis, comm. gen. [for duc-s; fr. dūc-o, "to lead"] *A leader*, *commander*.

E.

ĕd-ĭtus, ĭta, ĭtum, adj. [ēd-o, "to put, or set, forth"] *High*, *lofty*, *elevated*.

ē-dŏcĕo, dŏcŭi, doctum, dŏcēre, 2. v. a. [e (=ex), "thoroughly"; dŏcĕo, "to teach"] *To teach*, or *show*, *thoroughly*; *to inform*, *apprize*.

e; see ex.

ē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [e (=ex), "out"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead out* or *forth*.

ef-fēmĭn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-fēmin-o; fr. ex, denoting "change"; fēmin-a, "a woman"] *To render effeminate*, *enervate*.

ef-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-făcio; fr. ex, "out"; făcio, "to make"] *To effect*, *accomplish*, *bring about*, *make*, *complete*. *To produce*.

ef-fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-fŭgio; fr. ex, "out"; fŭgio, "to flee"] *To flee out* or *away*; *to escape*.

ĕgo, Gen, mĕi (plur. **nos**), pers. pron. *I* [akin to Gr. ἐγώ].

ē-grĕdĭor, gressus sum, grĕdi, 3. v. dep. [for ē-grădior; fr. ē (=ex), "out"; grădior, "to step"] *To disembark* from a vessel; *to land*.

ē-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3 v. a. [for ē-jăcio; fr. e (=ex), "out"; jăcio, "to cast"] *To cast* or *throw out*: ējĭcĕre se, *to rush out*, *sally forth*. *To eject*, *expel*.

ējusmodi: *of such a kind*.

ĕnim, conj. *For*.

ĕo, ĭvi *or* ĭi, t, um, īre, v. n. *To go* [akin to Sans. root I, "to go"].

ĕo, adv. [prob. for eom (=eum), old acc. sing. masc. of pron. is, "this, that", Of place: *To that place*, *thither*, *there*. *For this reason*, *on the following account*.

ĕŏdem, adv. [for eomdem = eumdem; fr. idem, "the same"] *To the same place*.

ĕphippĭ-ātus, āta, ātum, adj. [ephippi-um] *Having horse-cloths*, or *housings*.

ĕphippium, ii, n. *A horse-cloth*, *housings* [Gr. ἐφίππιον].

ĕpistŏla, ae, f. *A letter*, *epistle* [ἐπιστολή, "that which is sent to" one].

ĕqu-ĕ-s, ĭtis, m. [for equ-i-(t)s; fr. ĕqu-us; I, root of eo, "to go"] *A horseman*. Plur.: *Cavalry*.

ĕqu-ester, tris, estre, adj. [equus, "a horse"] *Pertaining to a horse*, *horse-*, *cavalry-*.

ĕquitā-tus, tūs, m. [ĕquit(a)-o, "to be an *eques* or horseman; to ride"] *Cavalry*, *horse soldiers*.

ĕqu-us, i, m. *A horse* [root AC, "swift": cp. acuer].

ērect-us, ta, tum, adj. [for ereg-tus; fr. ērigo, "to raise up"] *High*, *lofty*.

ē-rĭpĭo, ripŭi, reptum, ĭ, ĕre, 3. v. a. [for ē-răpio; e (=ex), "away"; răpio, "to snatch"] *To snatch*, *tear*, or *wrest away*. *To rescue*.

ē-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. n. [e (=ex), "out"; rumpo, "to

break"] *To break* out from a place; *to rush*, or *sally, forth*: *to make a sortie* or *sally*.

ē-ruptĭo, tĭōnis, f. [erumpo] *A sortie, sally.*

essĕd-ārĭus, ārĭi, m. [essedum] *A chariot-warrior.*

essĕdum, i. n. *A war-chariot* of the ancient Gauls and Britons [Celtic word, ess, "a chariot"].

et, conj. *And*: et..et, *both..and* [akin to Gr. ἔτι, "moreover."

ĕtĭam, conj. [akin to et] *And too, and furthermore*; *likewise, also, besides. Even.*

et-si, conj. [et, "even"; si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

ē-vādo, vāsi, vāsum, vādĕre, 3. v. n. [ē (=ex), "out"; vādo, "to go"] *To get off, escape.*

ē-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. n. [ē (=ex), "out"; vĕnĭo, "to come"] *To turn out, issue, happen.*

ēven-tus, tūs, m. [ēvĕn-ĭo, "to turn out, issue"] *Occurrence*, (*event*: ex eventu suarum navium, *from the occurrence of his ships*, i.e.) *from what had happened to*, or *befall n, his ships.*

ēvŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, vŏcāre, 1. v. a. [ē (=ex), "out"; vŏco, "to call"] *To call out* or *forth*; *to summon.*

ē-vŏlo, vŏlāvi, volātum, vŏlāre, 1. v. n.: [e, "out," volo, "to fly"]. *To sally forth, to rush out.*

ex, (ē), prep. gov. abl.: Of place: *Out of, away from. From. In conformity with, according to. In consequence of, on account of.* In specifying a multitude from which a thing, *etc.*, is taken, or of which it forms a part: *Out of, of.*

ex-ăgĭto, ăgĭtāvi, ăgĭtātum, ăgĭtāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "without force"; ăgĭto, "to disturb, chase"] *To harass.*

ex-ănĭm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a [ex, implying "negation"; ănĭm-a, "life"] *To deprive of strength, weaken, exhaust.*

ex-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [ex, "out *or* forth"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go forth*, or *away*; *to withdraw, depart.*

ex-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-căpĭo; fr. ex, "without force"; căpĭo, "to take"] *To take, take up, collect, gather. To sustain, support, bear.*

excĭ-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [excĭ-o, "to call forth"] *To erect, construct, build. To excite, rouse, spur on.*

ex-cūs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-caus-o; fr. ex, "from"; causa, "a charge"] *To excuce.*

exercĭtā-tĭo, tĭōnis, f. [exercĭt(a)-o, "to exercise" *Exercise, practice.*

exercĭtus, ĭtūs, m. [exercĕo, "to exercise"] *An army*, as a trained and disciplined body of men.

ex-ĭgo, ēgi, actum, ĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [fo. ex-ăgo; fr. ex, "out"; ăgo, "to lead"] Of time: *To pass, spend*

exĭgŭ-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [exiguus, "small"] *Smallness, small size.*

exĭgŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. *Small, little.*

ex-istĭmo, istĭmāvi, istĭmātum, istĭmāre, 1. v. a. [for ex-aestĭmo; fr. ex, "without force"; aestĭmo, "to think"] *To think, imagine, deem, suppose.*

exĭ-tus, tūs, m. [exĕo, "to go out": from ex, "out of"; ĕo, "to go"] Of circumstances, *etc.*: *An issue, result, conclusion.*

ex-pĕd-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [ex, "out of"; pes, pĕd-is, "the foot"] *To extricate, loose, disengage.*

expĕdītus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of expedio. Pa.: *Unencumbered*; *free* from any thing hindering ready action. *Ready, easy.*

ex-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive out, expel.*

ex-pĕrĭor, pertus sum, pĕrīri, 4. v. dep. [ex, "thoroughly"; obsol. pĕrĭor, "to go *or* pass through"; hence, "to try"] *To try, prove, put to the test. To make trial of, have recourse to.*

ex-plōrātor, tōris, m. [explor(a)-o, "to spy out"] *A spy, scout.*

ex-plōro, plōrāvi, plōrātum, plōrāre, 1. v. a. [ex, in "augmentative" force; plōro, "to cry out"] *To search out, discover, ascertain.*

ex-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; pōno, "to put"] Naut. t. t.: *To set on shore*; *to land, disembark* a person. Of troops: *To display to view*; *to draw up, post.*

ex-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "out"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry out* or *away.*

ex-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; pugno, "to fight"] *To take by assault*; *to storm, capture.*

ex-quīro, quīsīvi, quīsītum, quīrĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-quaero; fr. ex, "very much"; quaero, "to seek for"] *To search out, ascertain.*

ex-sisto, stĭti, stĭtum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [ex, out *or* forth"; sisto, "to stand"] Of a calm: *To arise, prevail, be.*

ex-specto, spectāvi, spectātum,

spectāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "very much"; specto, "to look out"] *To wait for, await, wait to see; to wait* until.

ex-strŭo, (-**trŭo**), struxi, structum, struĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; strŭo, "to heap up"] *To build up, raise, rear.*

ex-tĭmesco, timŭi, no sup., timescĕre, 3. v. a. inch. [ex, "greatly"; timesco (abselete as finite verb): Occurring only in pres. part.] *To fear greatly; to dread.*

ex-trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, trūdĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; trūdo, "to thrust"] *To force out, exclude.*

extrēmum, i; see extrēmus.

extrēmus, a, um, sup. adj.: Of position: *Outermost, extreme. Last,* in the widest sense of the word. As Subst.: **extrēmum,** i, n. *The end, close termination.*

exŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭere, 3. v. a. With Abl.: *To strip,* or *despoil, of.*

F.

făcil-e, adv. [facil-is] *Easily, with ease.*

făc-ĭlis, ile, adj. [făc-io, "to do"] *Easy, devoid of difficulty.*

făcilius; see făcile.

făc-ĭnus, inŏris, n. [făc-io, "to do" *Misdeed, crime.*

făcio, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. a. [root FU, "to be." in causative sense: cp. *fui,* —bam imper. indic. Gk. φύω.] *To make,* in the widest acceptation of the term: proelium facere, (*to make,* i.e.) *to engage in a battle*; so, proelio facto, *when the engagement had taken place,* opportunitatem sibi facere, (*to make to them,* i. e.) *to grant* or *afford them the opportunity,* facere iter, (*to make a march,* i. e.) *to march. To build, construct. To do.*—Pass.: **fīo,** factus sum, fiĕri; see fio.

factu, Supine in u fr. facio.

factum, ti. n. [făc-io, "to do"] *A deed, action.*

făcul-tas, tātis, f. [obsc. făcul = făcilis] *Power, means, opportunity.*

fal-lo, fĕfelli, falsum, fallĕre, 3. v. a. *To deceive* [akin to Gr. σφάλ-λω, "to tremble"—in causative force.

falx, falcis, f. *A pruning-hook; a scythe.* A military implement in the form of a *hook* or *scythe* used in sieges for pulling down walls; called at ch. 14 falx mūrālis.

fastīgo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a.: *To make pointed, to sharpen* or *bring to a point.* P. perf. pass.: *Sloped down sloping.*

fēlīc-iter, adv. [felix, fēlīc-is, "prosperous"] *Prosperously.*

fĕre, adv. *Nearly, almost, for the most part, about.*

ferme, adv. *Nearly, almost.*

fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg.: [root, FER, "to bear": cp. φέρω, φέρνη, φόρος; ferax, fertilis, fortis, fortuna; Goth., bar, baira; A. S., bere; Scottish, bere = barley. The root TUL or TOL, appears in τλάω, τάλαντον: tollo, tolero; Gothic, thula; O.H.G. dolens; Scottish, thole.] *To bear, bring, carry*: arma ferre, *to carry arms,* i. e. *to be soldiers,* ch. 19. Of a river: Pass. in reflexive force: *To rush onwards.* Of terms: *To offer, propose.* Of abstract things as subjects: Without object: *To allow, permit*: quàm consuetudo ferret, (*than customed allowed,* i. e.) *than was customary* or *usual,* ch. 32.

ferr-ĕus, ĕa, ĕum, adj. [ferrum, "iron"] ("Of, *or* belonging to, *ferrum*"; hence) *Made of iron, iron.*

fĕr-us, a, um, adj. ("Wild" hence) *Fierce, savage* [akin to θήρ, Æolic φήρ, "a wild animal"].

fī-bŭla, bulae, f. [for fig-bula, fr. fig-o, "to fasten"]. In carpentry: *A brace.*

fictus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of fingo.—As Subst.: **ficta,** ōrum, n. plur. *Feigned* or *fictitious things,* ch. 5.

fĭd-ēlis, ēle, adj. [fīd-es, "faith"] *Faithful*; sometimes with Dat.

fĭdes, ĕi, f. [fīd-o, "to put faith *or* confidence" in] *Faith, good faith. Faithfulness, fidelity. Promise engagement, plighted word*: fidem jurejurando facere, (*to make an engagement by,* or *under, an oath*; i.e.) *to bind* one's self *by oath. Guardian, care, protection.*

fĭg-ūra, ūrae, f. [FIG, root of fingo, "to form"] *Form, shape.*

fīlius, i, m.: [root FU, in fui, φυω. "to beget."] *A son.*

fingo, finxi, fictum, fingĕre, 3. v. a.: *To form, make. To feign.*—Pass.: **fingor,** fictus sum, fingi [prob. akin to θιγ, root of θιγ-γάνω, "to touch"].

fīn-io, ivi *or* ii, itum, ire, 4. v. a. [fin-is] *To bound, limit. To end, terminate, finish.*

fī-nis, nis, m. [probably for fid-nis, fr. findo, "to divide," through root FID] Plur.: *Borders* of a country; and so, *territory, land, country* included within certain borders.

fīn-itimus, itima, itimum, adj. [fin-is] *Bordering upon, adjoining, neighbouring.*

fīo, factus sum, fĭĕri, v. pass. irreg.: see facio: *To be made. To become. To happen* or *come to pass; to be brought about.*

firm-ĭter, adv. [firm-us, "firm"] *Firmly*: firmiter insistere, *to stand firmly.* i.e. *to get a firm footing.*

firm-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [firmus, strong"] *Strength.*

fir-mus, ma, mum, adj. *Strong, firm* [for fer-mus, fr. fĕr-o.

fistūca, ae, f. *A rammer, beetle*; at ch. 17, the fistucae mentioned were probably machines, worked by ropes and pulleys, by which heavy weights were raised to a considerable height and then made to fall heavily on the piles beneath.

flecto, flexi, flexum, flectĕre, 3. v. a. *To turn, bend* [akin to πλέκ-ω, "to plait or twist"].

flōrens, ntis: P. pres. of floreo. Pa.: *Flourishing, prosperous.*

flōr-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. n. [flos, flor-is, "a flower"] *To be in a flourishing* or *prosperous condition; to flourish; to be eminent, distinguished,* or *conspicuous.*

fluc-tus, tūs, m. [for flugvtus, fr. *billow.*
FLUGV, root of flŭo, "to flow"] *A wave,*

flū-men, mĭnis, n. [flū-o] *A river.*

fŏr-is, is, f. *A door*; mostly plur., *doors* [akin to θύρ-α].

for-ma, mae, f. [for fer-ma; fr. fĕr-o, "to bear"] *Form, shape.*

for-s, tis (only in Nom. and Abl. Sing.), f. [probably for fertis; fr. fĕro] *Chance, hazard, accident.* In. Abl.: *By chance, accidentally, by accident.*

fŏre, inf. fut. of sum.

for-tis, te, adj. *Brave, bold, courageous* [for fertis. fr. fĕr-o; and so, "bearing, that bears"; hence, "strong"; hence, as a result, "brave."]

fort-ĭter, adv. [fort-is] *Courageously, with courage, bravely.*

fort-ūna, ūnae, f. [fors, fortis] *Chance, hap, luck, fortune. Good luck, good fortune, prosperity. Ill-luck, misfortune,* Plur.: *Property, possessions, goods, fortune.*

fos-sa, [for fod-sa; fr. fŏd-ĭo, "to dig"] *A ditch, trench, fosse.*

frango, frēgi, fractum, frangĕre, 3. v. a. Of a ship: *To shatter, wreck, dash to pieces* [akin to Gr. ῥήγνυμι].

frāter, tris, m. *A brother.*

frĕm-ĭtus, ĭtūs, m. [frĕm-o, "to roar"] *A roaring, roar.*

frĕquens, ntis, adj. Of persons: *Assembled in great numbers, numerous, crowding together.*

frē-tus, ta, tum, adj. ("Supported" by something; hence) With Abl.: *Relying,* or *depending, upon; trusting to.*

frīg-ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [frīg-ĕo, "to be cold"] *Cold.*

frons, tis; n. f.: *front*; a fronte, *from the front.*

frūment-ārĭus, āria, ārium, adj. [frument-um] *Pertaining to corn*: res frūmentāria, *corn, provisions.*

frūmentātum, Supine in um fr. frumentor.

frūment-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [frument-um] *To get corn, forage.*

frū-mentum, menti, n. [frŭor. "to eat"] *Corn, grain*; plur.: *Corn,* i.e. *crops.*

frŭor, fructus *and* frūĭtus sum, frŭi, 3. v. dep. With Abl.: *To enjoy* [root FRU or FRUG, akin to Sans. root BHUJ, "to eat," also "to enjoy"].

frustrā, adv. [akin to frando] ("In a deceived manner"; hence) *In vain, to no purpose*: non frustra, (*not in vain,* i.e.) *effectually, with effect.*

fŭg-a, ae, f. [fŭg-ĭo, "to flee"] *Flight,* in fugam conjicere, *to put to flight, rout.*

fŭgĭo, fūgi, fūgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. n. *To flee, flee away, take to flight* [akin to φυγ, root of φεύγω, "to flee."

funda, ae, f. *A sling* [Gr. σφενδ-όνη].

fundĭtor, ōris, m. *A slinger.*

fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fundĕre, 3. v. a. ("To pour out"; hence) Milit t t.: *To rout or overthrow.* Pass.: **fundor**, fūsus sum, fundi [akin to χέ-ω, "to pour out"; χύ-σις, "a pouring out"].

fūn-is, is, m. *A cord, rope. A cable.*

G.

gaesum, i, n. A long heavy *javelin* used by the Gauls [said to be a Keltic word].

gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2. v. semi-dep. *To rejoice* or *be glad* [root GAV, "to rejoice," akin to Gr. γηθέω, "to rejoice"].

gen-s, tis, f. [gĕn-o, "to beget": cp. γένος, γίγνομαι] *A race* of persons. *A nation.*

gĕnus, ĕris, n. *A race, stock, family.* Of things: *Kind, sort*: see gens.

gero, gessi, gestum, gĕrĕre, 3. v. a. *To do, perform, carry on.* Of war: *To wage.*

glădius, i, m. *A sword.*

glōr-ĭa, iae, f. [=clu-oria, from KLU, "to hear": cp. κλύω, κλέος] *Glory, renown, fame.*

grāt-ĭa, iae, f. [grāt-us, in etymological force of "provided, or gifted, with favour"] *Favour, regard, esteem, friendship.*

grăv-is, e, adj. *Heavy.* Of age: *Advanced* [akin to Gr. βαρ-ύς].

grăv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [grăv-is, "weighty, important"] *Weight, importance.*

grăv-ĭter, adv. [gravis, "serious"] *Seriously, severely.*

gūbernā-tor, tōris, m. [gubern(a)-o, "to steer"] *A steersman, pilot.*

H.

hăb-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To have*, in the widest acceptation of the term. With double Acc.: *To have* one *as* something.

hībern-a, ōrum, n. plur. [hibern-us "winter"] With ellipse of castra, which is occasionally expressed: *Winter-camp, winter-quarters.*

hic, haec, hoc (Gen. hūjus; Dat. huic), pron. dem. *This* person *or* thing. As Subst. Sing.: **hic**, m. *This man, he.* **hoc**, m. *This thing, this.* Plur.: **hi**, m. *These persons* or *men.* **haec**, n, *These things.* **Hoc**, adverbial Abl.: *On this account, for this reason* [akin to pronominal root I, aspirated with c (=ce), demonstrative suffix].

hiĕm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [hiems, hiĕm-is] *To winter*: *to have,* or *take up, winter-quarters.*

hiem-s, is, f. *Winter*, [akin to Sans. *him-a*, "snow"; Gr. χειμών, "winter"; χεῖμα, "winter weather"].

hŏmo, ĭnis, comm. gen. *A person* or *man*, generally. Plur.: *Persons, men.*

hōra, ae. f. *An hour* [ὥρα].

hor-tor, tātus sum, tāri, 1. v. dep. [*To strongly urge*; *to exhort, advise*, etc. *To encourage* by exhortations [perhaps akin to ὀρ-νυμι, "to rouse"].

hos-tis, tis, comm. gen. *An enemy*, or *foe*, of one's country [prob. akin to Sans. root GHAS, "to eat"; O. H. G., *kast*; H.G., *gast*; English, *guest*].

hūc, adv. [for hoc, adverbial neut. acc. of hic, "this"] *To this place, hither.*

hujusmŏdi: Often written hujus modi. Of *such a sort.*

hūm-ānus, a, um, adj. [for hŏmĭnānus; fr. hŏmo, hŏmĭn-is] *Of*, or *belonging to, a man* or *men*; *human. Polished, civilized, refined.*

hŭm-ĭlis, ĭle, adj. [hŭm-us, "the ground"] *Low, lowly, humble.*

I.

ĭ-bi, adv. [pronominal root I.] *In that place, there.*

ī-dem, ĕădem, ĭ-dem (Gen. ĕjusdem; Dat. ĕīdem), pron. dem. [pronominal root I, with demonstrative suffix dem] *The same.* As Subst. n.: *The same thing.*

ĭdōnĕus, a, um, adj. *Fit, suitable, convenient.*

i-gnōsco, gnōvi, gnōtum, gnoscĕre, 3. v. a. and n. [for ingnosco; fr. in, "not"; gnosco (=nosco), "to know"] *To pardon, forgive, overlook.*

i-gnōtus, gnōta, gnōtum, adj. [for in-gnōtus; fr. in, "not"; gnōtus (= nōtus, "known"] *Not known, unknown.*

il-le, la, lud (Gen. illīus; Dat. illi), pron. adj. [for is-le; fr. is] *That.* As Subst. of all genders and both numbers: *That person* or *thing*; *he, she, it.*

il-līco, adv. [for in-loco; fr. in, "in"; loco, abl. of locus, "place"] *Forthwith, immediately.*

il-lĭgo, ligāvi, ligātum, ligāre, 1. v. a. [for in-ligo; fr. in, "on"; ligo, "to bind"] *To bind* or *tie on, to fasten.*

ill-o, adv. [prob. adverbial Acc. ill-om =ill-um; fr. ille] *To that place, thither. To that end, thereto*: eodem illo, *to that same end* or *point.*

imber, bris, m. *A heavy rain; a pelting shower* or *storm* [akin to ὄμβρος].

immānis, e, adj. [in, "not"; root MA, "to measure"; *i.e.*, immeasurably great] *Vast, huge*: immani magnitudine, abl. of quality.

im-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-mitto; fr. in, "in or within"; mitto, "to send"] *To send in* or *within. To let in, sink.*

im-mortālis, mortāle, adj. [for in-mortālis; fr. in, "not"; mortālis, "mortal"] *Immortal, undying.*

impĕdī-mentum, menti, n. [impedi-o] Plur.: *The baggage* of troops.

im-pĕd-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 1. v. a. [for in-pĕd-io; fr. in, "in": pes, pĕd-is, "the foot"] *To hinder, impede.*

impĕdītus, a, um; P. perf. pass. of impĕdio. Pa.: Of places: *Difficult.*

impello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-pello; fr. in, "against"; pello, "to drive"] *To impel, urge.*

im-pendĕo, no perf. nor sup., pen-

dēre, 2. v. n. [for in-pendeo; fr. in, "upon *or* over"; pendēo, "to hang down"] *To overhang.*

impen-sus, sa, sum, adj. [for im-pend-sus; fr. impend-o, "to weigh out"; hence, "to expend"] Of cost: *Great, large, considerable, high.*

impĕrā-tor, tōris, m. [imper(a)-o] *A commander*, esp. *a commander-in-chief.*

im-pĕrītus, pĕrīta, pĕrītum, adj. [for in-pĕrītus; fr. in "not"; pĕrītus, "skilful"] With Gen.: *Unskilful, unskilled*, or *inexperienced in; unversed in, not acquainted with.*

impĕr-ĭum, ĭi, n. [imper-o] *Power, authority, command.*

im-pĕro, pĕrāvi, perātum, pĕrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-păro; fr. in, "upon"; păro, "to put"] *To command, order, enjoin, bid.* Impers. Pass.: impĕrātum ĕrat, *it had been commanded.*

im-pĕtro, pĕtrāvi, pĕtrātum, pĕtrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-patro; fr. in, "without force"; patro, "to perform"] *To accomplish, to get, obtain.*

impĕt-us, ūs, m. [impĕt-o, "to fall upon *or* attack"] *An attack, assault, onset. Impetuosity, violence, vehemence, force.*

importāt-ītĭus, ītĭa, ītĭum, adj. [importat-um, supine of importo] *Imported, brought from abroad.*

im-porto, portāvi, portātum, 1. v. a. [in, "into"; porto, "to carry"]: *to import.*

im-prūdens, prūdentis, adj. [for in-prūdens; fr. in, "not"; prudens, "foreseeing"] *Not foreseeing*, or *expecting; not being aware; unaware.*

imprūdent-ĭa, ĭae, f. [imprūdens, imprudent-is, "imprudent"] *Imprudence, indiscretion.*

im-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre. 1, v. a. [for inpugno; fr. in, "against"; pugno] *To fight against; to attack.* With Object omitted: *To make an attack* or *assault.*

īm-um, i. n. [im-us, "lowest"] *The lowest part, the bottom.*

in, prep. gov. abl. *and* acc.: With Abl.: *In.* With Acc.: *Into. Upon. Against. At. For* [ἐν].

in-cen-do, di, sum, dĕre, 3. *To set on fire, burn* [for in-can-do; fr. in, "in *or* into"; root CAN; akin to κά-ω, "to burn"].

in-certus, certa, certum, adj. in, "not"; certus, "sure"] *Not sure, uncertain, doubtful.*

incĭtātus, a. um: P. perf. pass. of incīto. Pa.: Of a horse: *At full speed.*

in-cĭto, cĭtāvi, cĭtātum, cĭtāre, 1. v. a. [in, "without force"; cĭto, "to be set in rapid motion"] *To set in rapid motion, urge forward*: navem incitare, *to propel a ship rapidly forwards*: equum incitare, *to spur on a horse.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To set one's self in rapid motion*: i.e. *to hasten, rush.*

in-cognĭtus, cognĭta, cognĭtum, adj. [in, "not"; cognitus, "known"] *Unknown, not known.*

incŏlo, cŏlŭi, no sup. cŏlĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "in"; colo, "to dwell"] *To dwell, reside.*

in-cŏlŭmis, cŏlŭme, adj. [in, in "intensive" force; obsol. cŏlŭmis, "safe"] *Quite safe, safe, in safety.*

in-crēdĭbĭlis, crēdĭbĭle, adj. [in, "not"; crēdibilis, "to be believed"] *Not to be believed, incredible.*

i-n-de, adv. [probably fr. pronominal root I; with n, epenthetic; de, suffix] *After that, afterwards.*

indūcĭae, (or **indūtĭae**), ārum, f. plur. *A temporary cessation of hostilities; an armistice, truce.*

ĭn-ĕo, ĭvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. a. irreg. [in, "into"; 1. ĕo] Of a plan: *To form, adopt.*

ĭn-erm-is, e, adj. [for in-arm-is; fr. in, "not"; arm-a, "arms"] *Unarmed.*

ĭn-ers, ertis, adj. [for in-art-s; fr. in, "not"; ars, art-is, "art"] *Sluggish, inactive, indolent.*

in-fĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. [infĕr-us, "low" Of situation: *Lower.* Of persons: *Inferior.*

in-fĕro, tŭli, (il)-lātum, ferre, v. a. [in, "into *or* to"; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, carry*, or *bring into* or *to.* Of war: *To make upon, wage against.*

infirm-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [infirmus] Of mind: *Fickleness.*

in-firmus, firma, firmum, adj. [in, "not"; firmis] *Not strong, weak, feeble.*

infrā, adv. [syncopated fr. infĕrā, abl. fem. of infĕrus, "low"] *Below.*

in-flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "into"; flŭo, "to flow"] Of a river: *To flow* or *run into; to empty itself into.*

Iniqu-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [inīquus, "uneven"] Of ground, *etc.*: *Unevenness.*

ĭnĭ-tĭum, tĭi, n. [ĭnĕo, "to go into"] *A beginning, commencement, initiative.* Of a locality: *Entrance, first part.*

ĭnĭtus, a, um, (P. perf. pass. of ĭnĕo, "to go into"; hence, "to begin") *Begun,*

entered upon, commenced. Of a plan, etc.: *Formed.*

injĭcio, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-jăcio; fr. in; jăcio, "to cast"] [in, "upon"] *To cast*, or *throw, upon, infuse.*

injūrĭ-a, ae, f. [injūri-us, "injurious"] *Unjust* or *wrongful conduct*; *a wrong*, etc.

ĭnŏp-ia, ae, f. [inops, inŏpis, "without means"] *Want, lack, scarcity.*

in-ŏpīna-ns, ntis, adj. [in, "not"; ŏpin(a)-or, "to expect"] *Not expecting, unaware.*

inquam, v. def. *To say.*

inscient-ia, iae, f. [insciens, inscientis, "without knowledge"] With Objective Gen.: *Want of acquaintance with, ignorance of.* With Subjective Gen.: *Lack*, or *want of information* of a person as to a matter: *ignorance of.*

in-scĭ-us, a, um, adj. [in, "not"; scio, "to know"] *Not knowing, ignorant* of the cause, *etc.*, *unaware.*

in-sĕquor, sĕquūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [in, "after or upon"; sĕquor, "to follow"] *To follow after* or *close upon*; *to pursue, press upon* the fleeing enemy.

in-sĕro, sĕrŭi, sertum, sĕrĕre, 3. v. a. [in, "into"; sĕro, "to bind"] *To insert in, attach to*, etc.

insĭd-iae, iārum, f. plur. [insid-ĕo, "to take up a position in a place"] *An ambush, ambuscade.*

in-sĭnŭo, sinŭāvi, sinŭātum, sinŭāre, 1. v. a. [in, "into"; sinŭo, "to wind"] *To wind*, or *make a way, into*; insinuare se, *to make their way into* or *among.*

in-sisto, stĭti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "upon"; sisto, "to set one's self or stand"] With Acc. dependent on prep. in verb: *To apply one's self to, adopt, follow.*

in-stăbĭlis, stăbile, adj. [in, "not"; stăbilis, "that stands steady"] *Unsteady.*

in-stĭtŭo, stĭtŭi, stĭtūtum, stĭtŭĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-stătŭo; fr. in, "without force"; stătŭo, "to set"] Of troops: *To form, draw up.* Of a levy of persons: *To raise. To begin. To resolve, determine.*

in-sto, no perf. nor sup., stāre, 1. v. n. [in, "upon"; sto, "to stand"] *To press hard, assail vigorously.*

insuēfactus, a, um. [perf. part. of insuefacio]: *accustomed.*

instĭtū-tum, i, N. n. [in without force: statuo, "to set up"] *A custom, institution.*

in-sŭl-a, ae, f. [for in-săl-a; fr. in, "in"; săl-um, "the sea"] *An island.*

in-tĕg-er, ra, rum, adj. [in, "not"; TAG, root of tango, "to touch"] *Fresh, undiminished, unimpaired.*

intel-lĭgo, lexi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-lĕgo; fr. inter, "between"; lĕgo, "to choose"] *To perceive, understand, comprehend.*

in-tendo, tendi, tentum *and* tensum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. [in, "without force"; tendo, "to stretch *or* bend"] Of the mind as object: *To direct, turn, bend.* Without object and followed by Inf.: *To turn one's thoughts to* do, *to be intent upon* doing.

inter, prep. gov. acc. *Between, among*: inter se, *among themselves*, i.e., *mutually, reciprocally.*

inter-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; clūdo (=claudo, "to shut"] Of roads: *To close, stop* or *block up.* Of supplies: *To cut off.*

intĕr-ĕā, adv. [for intĕr-ĕam; fr. inter, "between"; ĕam, acc. sing. fem. of is] Of time: *Meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-fĭcio, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-făcio; fr. inter, "between"; făcio, "to make"] *To destroy*; esp. *to kill, slay, slaughter.*

intĕr-im, adv. [inter, "between"; im=eum, acc. masc. sing. of is] *In the meantime, meanwhile.*

inter-jĭcio, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-jăcio; fr. inter, "between"; hence] In Pass.: Of places: *Lying, being placed*, or *situate, between* several points. Of time: *Intervening.*

inter-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "apart"; mitto, "to make to go"] *To leave off*, or *discontinue, for awhile*; *to interrupt* the doing of a thing.

interven-tus, tūs, m. [inter-vĕn-io, "to arrive"] *The arrival*, or *coming on*, of something causing hindrances.

in-trītus, trīta, trītum, adj. [in, "not"; trītus, "rubbed"] *Not exhausted* or *worn out.*

inter-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; pōno, "to put"] *To interpose. To arise, occur.*

inter-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [inter, "among"; sum, "to be"] ("To be among"; hence) With Dat.: *To be present at, to engage*, or *take part, in.*

inter-vallum, valli, n. [inter, "between"; vallum, "the mound" of a camp, *etc.*] *An interval* of space; *distance.*

intrō-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [intro, "within"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead within* or *inside*.

in-ūsĭtātus, ūsĭtāta, ūsĭtātum, adj. [in, "not"; usitatus, "frequently used"] *Unusual, uncommon, extraordinary*.

in-ūtĭlis, ūtile, adj. [in, "not"; ūtĭlis, "useful"] *Useless, of no use*.

in-vĭcem, adv. [in, "according to": vicem, acc. of vicis, "turn"] *By turns, in turn*.

in-vĭŏlā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [in, "not"; vĭŏl(a)-o, "to hurt"] *That must not be hurt* or *injured; inviolable*.

invito, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To invite*.

invitus, a, um, adj. *Unwillingly, reluctant, against one's will*.

i-pse, psa, psum, pron. dem. [for is-pse; fr. is; suffix pse] *Self, very, identical*. As Subst. m. Sing.: *Himself*. Plur.: *Themselves*.

ir-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. n. [for in-rumpo; fr. in, "into"; rumpo, "to break or burst"] Folld. by in with acc.: *To break*, or *burst, into*; *to force one's way into*.

is, ĕa, id, pron. dem. [prob. nominal root I] *This, that*, person *or* thing just mentioned. As Subst. Sing. Masc.: *He*. Neut.: *It*. Plur. Masc.: *Those just mentioned; they*. Neut.: *Those things*. Abl. Sing. Neut.: **ĕo**, as abl. of measure with comparatives: *By so much* the more, *etc.*; *the more*.

ĭta, adv. *Thus, in this way* or *manner, so*: ita ut, *in such a way, that*. *To such a degree, so very*.

ĭtă-que, conj. [ĭta, "thus"; que, "and"] *And thus, and so*. *On this*, or *that, account*; *therefore*.

ĭtem, adv. *So, even so, in like manner*. *Also, likewise*.

ĭ-ter, ĭtĭnĕris, n. [eo, "to go," through root I] Of troops: *A march*. *A road*.

J.

jam, adv. [probably for eam, fr. is] *At this time; now*. *Already*.

jăcĭo, jēci, jactum, jăcĕre, 3. v. a. *To throw, cast, fling*.

jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, jŭbēre, 2. v. a. *To order, command, bid*.

jū-dĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for jur-dic-o; fr. jus, jūr-is, "law"; dĭc-o, "to point out"] *To judge, deem, consider*.

jŭg-um, i. n. [jungo, "to join," root JUG] *The yoke* of draught animals.

jū-mentum, menti, n. [for jug-mentum; fr. jungo, "to yoke," root JUG] *A draught-animal, beast of burden*.

junc-tūra, tūrae, f. [for jung-tūra; fr. jung-o, "to join"] *A joining*.

jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕre, 3. v. a.: *To join, unite* [akin to Gr. ζυγ, root of ζευγνυμι; and to root YUG].

jūs, jūris, n. *Law*, whether divine or human. *A right* resulting from law; *a privilege* [akin to Sans. root YU, "to bind"].

jus-jūra-ndum, ndi, n. (Gen.: juris-jurandi, n.) [jus, "a right"; jur(a)-o, "to swear"] *An oath*.

jus-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for jurtus; fr. jus, jur-is, "law"] *Law-abiding, just*.

jŭven-tus, tūtis, f. [jŭvĕn-is, "young"] *The youth*, i.e. *young men*.

L

lăb-or, ōris, m. *Toil, exertion, labour* [akin to root LABH (whence also λαβ, root of λα(μ)β-άνω, "to take"), "to obtain or get"].

lăbōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [labor]. *To labour, toil*. Of soldiers: *To be hard pressed*; *to be in difficulty* or *danger*.

lac, lactis, n. *Milk* [prob. for mlact, akin to root MELG, "to rub, to stroke"; and so, "the thing rubbed or stroked," i.e. "to milk," from the udder; also akin to γάλα, γάλακτ-ος].

lăc-esso, essivi *or* essii, essī-tum, essĕre, 3. v. a. intens. *To fall upon, attack, assail* [akin to root DAK (whence also δάκ-νω), "to bite"].

lăcus, ūs, m. *A lake*, as a large body of water in a natural hollow, [λάκκος].

laetus, a, um, adj. *Joyful, joyous* [prob. akin to Sans. root LAS, "to shine"; also, "to delight"].

langu-ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [langu-ĕo, "to be languid"] *Languid, faint, weary*, through fatigue, *etc*.

lă-pis, pĭdis, m. *A stone* [akin to λᾶ-ας].

lass-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [lass-us, "weary"] *Weariness, fatigue, lassitude*.

lāt-e, adv. [lāt-us, "wide"] *Widely, extensively, far and wide*: quam latissime, *as widely as possible*.

lăt-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. n.: *To be*, or *lie hid*; *to be concealed*. *To escape notice* or *observation* [akin to λαθ, root of λα(ν)θ-άνω].

lāt-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [lātus, "wide, broad"] *Width, breadth*.

latr-o, ōnis, m. *A robber, bandit*, [λάτρ-ις].

lătus, ĕris, n. [prob. akin to lātus, "wide"] Of an army : *The flank.*

laus, laudis, f. *Praise* [prob. akin to Gr. κλύ-ω, "to hear"; and so, "that which one hears "of one's self," in a good sense].

lăvo, lăvāvi *and* lāvi, lăvātum *and* lōtum, lăvāre, 1. v. a. *To wash, bathe*, some object. Pass. in reflexive.

lēgā-tio, tiōnis, f. [lēg(a)-o, "to send on an embassy"] *An embassy. The persons attached to an embassy; delegates.*

lēgā-tus, ti. m. [id] *An ambassador. A delegate* or *commissioner.* Milit. t. t.: *A lieutenant-general; a lieutenant.*

lĕg-io, iōnis, f. [lĕg-o, "to levy *or* enlist"] A Roman *legion*, consisting of 10 cohorts of infantry, and 300 cavalry.

lĕgiōn-ārius, āria, ārium, adj. [lĕgion, lĕgiōn-is] *Of*, or *belonging to, a legion; legionary.*

lēnis, e, adj. *smooth, soft.*

lĭben-ter, adv. [for libent-ter; fr. libens, libent-is, "willing"] *Willingly.*

lĭbĕrālĭter, [liber "free"] *Courteously.*

līb-ĕri, ĕrōrum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) *Children* [akin to Sans. root LUBH, "to desire *or* love"].

lībĕro, āvi, ātum, āre; 1. v. a. [liber, "free"] *To liberate.*

lĭber-tas, tātis, f. [liber, "free"] *Liberty*, or *freedom*, of a people, *etc.*

lĭc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre (usually only in 3rd pers. sing. and inf. mood), 2. v. n. *To be allowable; to be permitted* or *lawful.*

ling-ŭla, ŭlae, f. dim. [lingua, "a tongue"] *A little tongue* of land.

līnum, i, n. *Flax* [λίνον].

lĭtera, ae, f.: Sing.: *A letter* of the alphabet. Plur.: *A letter, epistle.*

lī-tus, tŏris, n. [prob. LI, root of li-no, "to overspread"] *The seashore, beach, strand.*

lŏc-us, i, m. (plur. **lŏci**, m., and **lŏca**, n.) *A place.* Milit. t. t.: *A post* or *position* [probably akin to root λεχ, whence λέγω, "to put, place."]

long-e, adv. [long-us, "long"; hence, "far off"] *Far off, at a distance*:—Comp.: *Too far off. Very far.* With Comparative and Superlative words: *By far; very much, greatly.*

long-inqu-us (trisyll.), a, um, adj. [for long-hinc-vus; fr. long-us, "long"; hinc, "hence"] *Far off, distant, remote.*

longŭrĭus, ĭi, m. *A long pole.*

long-us, a. um, adj. *Long.*

lū-na, nae, f. [for luc-na; fr. lūc-ĕo, "to shine"] *The moon.*

lux, lūcis, f. [for luc-s; fr. lūc-ĕo, "to shine"] *Light*: prima lux, *the early dawn, day-break.*

M.

māchĭnā-tio, tiōnis, f. [māchin(a)-or, "to contrive"] ("A contriving"; hence, "a contrivance"; hence) *A machine, engine.*

măg-is, comp. adv. [MAG, root of magnus] *More; in a greater* or *higher degree.* Sup.: maxime (=mag-sime).

magn-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [magn-us] *Greatness, magnitude.*

mag-nus, na, num, adj.: *Great, large. Numerous*; in Comp.: major pars, *the majority.* In age: *Great, advanced. Mighty, powerful.* Comp.: major (=măg-ior); Sup.: maximus (=măg-s-imus) [root MAG, akin to Gr. μέγ-ας Sans. *mah-a*, "great"; fr. Sans. root MAH, originally MAGH, "to be great, powerful."

magn-ŏpĕre, (also written magno opere), adv. [for magno opere; abl. sing. of *magnŭs*, "great"; *ŏpŭs*, "toil"] *greatly, very greatly, exceedingly.*

mājor, us, comp. adj.; see magnus.—As Subst.: **mājōres**, um, m. plur. *Ancestores, forefathers.*

mājōres, um; see major.

mălăcia, ae, f. *A calm* at sea; *a dead calm* [μαλακία].

mālo, mālŭi, no sup. malle, v. a. irreg. [contracted fr. mag-vŏlo; fr. root MAG; see magnus; vŏlo; "to wish"] *To choose, rather, to perfer.*

mālus, i, f. *A mast* of a ship [μηλ-έα].

mandā-tum, ti, n. [mand(a)o. *A command, order*, etc.

man-do, dāvi, dātum, dāre, 1. v. a. [măn-us, "hand"; do, "to put"] *To enjoin, command*: constructed with Dat. of person and ut *or* uti with Subjunctive.

māne, adv. *Early in the morning.*

măn-eo, si, sum, ēre, 2, v. n. *To remain, continued* [μέν-ω].

mă-nus, nūs, f. [root MA "to measure"] *A hand. A band* or *body* of men; *a force*

măre, is, n. *The sea.*

măr-ĭtimus, itima, itimum, adj. [măr-e] *Of*, or *belonging to, the sea; sea-; maritime.*

mātĕr-ĭa, ĭae, f. [māter, māt(e)r-is, "a producer"; hence, "a mother"] *Wood, timber.*

mātūr-e, adv. [matur-us] *Early, soon.*

mātūr-us, a, um, adj. Of time: *Early.*

maxĭm-e, sup. adv. [maximus] *In the greatest* or *highest degree; especially, principally, chiefly.* Comp.: măgis; see măgis.

mĕdĭŏ-cris, cre, adj. [mĕdĭus, uncontracted gen. mĕdĭo-i, "middle"] *Moderate*: non mediocris, *not moderate*, i.e. *very great, excessive.*

mĕd-ĭus, ĭa, ĭum, adj. *That is in the middle* or *midst; middle*, etc. *The middle of* that denoted the subst. to which it is in attribution: in mediam aciem, *into the middle of the army drawn up for battle*, i.e. *into the space between the first and third lines* [akin to μέσ-ος].

membrum, i, N. n. *A limb, member.*

mĕ-mĭn-i, isse, v. defect. *To bear in mind, recollect, remember* [changed fr. men-mĕn-i, reduplicated fr. root MEN, akin to root MAN, "to think"].

mĕmŏr-ĭa, ĭae, f. [mĕmŏr, "mindful"] *Memory, recollection, remembrance.*

men-s, tis, f. [root MEN; see memini] *The mind*, as being the origin of thought.

mercā-tor, tōris, m. [merce(a,or, "to trade"] *A trader, merchant.*

mĕto, messŭi, messum, mĕtĕre, 3. v. a. *To mow* or *reap; to cut down* the crops [prob. ἀ-μά-ω].

mĕtus, ūs, m. *Fear, dread.*

mĕ-us, a, um, pron. possess. [me] *Of*, or *belonging to, me; my, mine.*

mīles, ĭtis, comm. gen. *A soldier.*

mīlit-āris, āre, adj. [miles, milit-is] *Of*, or *belonging to, a soldier; military*: res militaris, *military affairs.*

mill-e, rum, adj. indecl. *A thousand*; mille passūs, *a thousand paces*, i.e. a *(Roman) mile*, estimated at 1618 English yards, or 142 yards less than an English mile. As Subst.: **millĭa**, ĭum, n. plur. *A thousand* [akin to χίλ-ιοι].

mĭnĭm-e, sup. adj. [minim-us] *In the least degree; by no means.*

mĭnĭm-um, sup. adj. [adverbial neut. of minim-us] *Very little, very slightly, not at all.* Phrase: Non minimum, *Particularly, especially, in the highest degree.*

mĭn-ŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3. v. n. *To grow*, or *become, less*: minuente aestu, *at the ebb of the tide* [root MIN, akin to mĭnor and μιν-ύθω].

mĭn-us, comp. adj. [adverbial neut. of minor, "less"] *Less; in a less*, or *smaller degree*, etc.; *not so much.* To make an emphatic negation: *Not at all, by no means.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. *To let suffer*, or *allow to go. To cause to go, to send.* Of a missile: *To cast, hurl, launch.*

mōbĭl-ĭter, adv. [mōbĭl-is, "that can be easily roused"; hence] *By sudden impulse, hastily*, etc.

mōbĭl-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [mōbĭl-is, "easily moved"; hence, of persons, "quick, rapid"] *Quickness, rapidity, speed.*

mo-bĭlis, bile, adj. [for movbilis; fr. mŏv-ĕo, "to move"] Of character: *Changeable, fickle.*

mŏd-ĕror, ĕrātus sum, ĕrāri, 1. v. dep. [mŏd-us, "a bound"] *To manage, regulate*, etc.

mŏ-do, adv. *Only, merely*: non modo...sed ne quidem, *not only not...but not even*: ch. 4.

mŏ-dus, di. m. *A measure* or *standard* by which anything is measured. *Measurement, extent, size. A manner, method, way, mode. Bounds, limit*, etc. With Gen. of pron. either written separately or as one word: *Sort, kind*: hūjus mŏdi, *of this sort*; so ējus mŏdi, *of that sort*, etc. [akin to Sans. root MA, "to measure"; whence also μέ-τρον, "a measure"].

moen-ĭa, ĭum, n. plur.] *Defensive walls, fortifications* [akin to ἀ-μύν-ω, "to ward off"].

mōles, is, f.: *A dam, mole, pier.*

mol-lis, le, adj. [for mov-lis; fr. mŏv-ĕo, "to move"] *Easily moved, changeable, fickle.*

mŏn-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To warn, admonish, advise* [akin to root MAN, "to think"].

mon-s, tis, m. [for min-s; fr. min-ĕo, "to project"] *A mountain, mount.*

mŏra, ae, f. *Delay.*

mŏr-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. a. [mor-a, "delay"] *To delay*, i.e. *to tarry, linger remain, stay.*

mor-s, tis, f. [mŏr-ior, "to die"] *Death.*

m-os, ōris, m. [prob. for me-os; fr. mĕ-o, "to go"] *Practice, usage, custom.*

mō-tus, tūs, m. [for mov-tus; fr. mŏv-ĕo] *A moving, motion.* Of vessels, etc.: *A movement, evolution.*

mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a.: *To move, set in motion.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To move one's self*, i.e. *to remove, depart, get away.*

mŭlĭer, ĕris, f. *A woman.*

mult-ĭtūdo, itūdĭnis, f. [mult-us] *A great number, a multitude.*

mult-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of mult-us] *Much, greatly*: non multum, *not much = but little.*

mul-tus, ta, tum, adj.: 1. Sing.: *Much.* 2. Plur.: *Many.* Comp.: plūs; Sup.: plūrimus [perhaps akin to πολ-ύς]. Sing.: *Much.* Of time. *Much*, or *far, gone*; multā nocte, *when the night was far gone, late in the night.* Plur.: *Many.* As Subst.: **multa**, ōrum, n. plur. *Many things.* Comp.: plus; Sup.: plūr-imus [perhaps akin to πολ-ύς].

mūn-ĭo, (old form **moen-ĭo**), ivi or ii, itum, ire, 4. v. a. [moen-ia] *To build a wall* or *raise fortifications*, etc., *around*; *to fortify.*

mūni-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [mūni-o] *A fortifying, the act of raising fortifications. A fortification, rampart.*

mūr-ālis, āle, adj. [mūr-us, "a wall"] *Pertaining to a wall*; *wall-*: murales falces, *hooks for pulling down walls.*

N

nam, conj.: *For.* In transitions: *But, though, indeed.*

nam-que, conj. [nam; que] An emphatic confirmative particle: *For, for indeed, for truly.*

na(n)c-iscor, nactus sum, nancisci, 3. v. dep.: *To get, obtain. To meet with, find.*

na-scor, (old form **gna-**), tus sum, sci, 3. v. dep. *To be born* [root NA = GNA, another form of root GEN = Gr. γεν-; see gens.

nā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [na-scor, "to be born"] *A nation, race* of people.

nā-tūra, tūrae, f. [id.] *Nature*: natura loci, *nature of the place*, i.e. *natural situation*: Adverbial Abl.: Naturā, *By nature, naturally, Natural character* or *disposition*; *nature.*

nauta, ae, m. *A sailor, seaman* [ναύτης].

naut-ĭcus, ica, icum, adj. *Of*, or *belonging to, ships* or *sailors*: *naval* [ναυτικός].

nā-tus, tūs (only found in Abl. sing.), m. [na-scor] *Birth.*

nāv-ālis, āle, adj. [nav-is, "a ship"] *Naval, sea.*

nāvĭgā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [nāvig(a)-o, "to sail"] *A sailing*; i.e. the act of sailing; *navigation.*

nāvĭg-ĭum, ii, n. [nāvig-o] ("A sailing"; hence) *A vessel, ship, bark.*

nāv-ĭgo, igāvi, igātum, igāre, 1. v. n. [nav-is, "a ship"] *To sail.*

nāvis, is, f. *A ship*: nāvis ŏnĕrāria, *a merchant-vessel* or *transport*: navis longa, *a ship of war* (being of a greater length than ordinary vessels for the purpose of obtaining greater speed) [akin to Gr. ναῦς].

ne, adv *and* conj.: Adv.: *No not*: ne quidem, *not even.* Conj.: *That not*: *lest.*

nec; see nĕque.

nĕcessārĭ-o, adv. [nĕcessāri-us, "necessary"] *Unavoidably, necessarily.*

nĕ-ces-se, neut. adj. [found only in Nom. and Acc. sing.: sometimes used as a substantive, and in connection with *sum* or *habeo*) [for ne-ced-se; fr. nē, "not"; cēd-o, "to yield"] *Unavoidable, inevitable*, etc. *Needful, requisite, necessary.*

nĕc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. ("To cause to perish"; hence) *To kill, put to death, slay*, [root NAK, "to harm"] cp. νέκυς, noceo.]

neg-lĭgo, lexi, lectum, ligĕre, 3. v. a. [for nec-lĕgo; fr. nec, "not"; lĕgo, "to gather"] *To overlook, neglect.* With Inf.: *To make light of* doing; *to take no heed*, or *neglect, to* do. *To overlook, neglect.* With Inf.: *To make light of* doing; *to take no heed*, or *neglect, to* do, *etc.*

nĕg-ōtĭum, ōtii, n. [for necōtium; fr. nec, "not"; ōtium, "leisure"] *An affair, matter, business.*

nē-mo, minis, comm. gen [contr. fr. ne-homo; fr. ne, "not"; homo, "a person"] *No person, no one, nobody.*

nē-quāquam, adv. [ne, "not"; quāquam, adverbial abl. fem. of quisquam, "any"] *Not by any means, by no means.*

nĕ-que (contracted **nec**), adv. *and* conj. [nĕ, "not"; que, "and"] *And not, nor*: neque..neque, *neither..nor.*

neu; contr. fr. nēve.

nē-ve (neu), conj. *And not, nor*; *or not* [ne, "not"; ve, akin to Sans. *vā*, "and"].

nĭ-hil, n. indecl. [shortened by apocope fr. ni-hilum—for ne hilum (*i.e.* ne, "not"; hilum = filum, "a thread"); "not a thread"; hence) *Nothing.* In adverbial force: *In no degree* or *respect*; *not at all.*

nĭ-sĭ, conj. [ne, "not"; si, "if"] *If not*; i.e. *unless, except.*

nŏc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n. With Dat.: *To harm, hurt, injure.* Inf. Pass. Impers.: nŏcēri, *That harm*, or *injury, (should) be inflicted* [see neco].

noctu, f. [abl. of obsolete noctus = nox] *By night; in the course of the night.*

n-ōlo, ōlŭi, olle, v. irreg. [contracted fr. ne, volo; nĕ, "not"; vŏlo, "to wish"] *To not wish, to be unwilling.*

nō-men, mĭnis, n. [no-sco, "to know"] *A name. A purpose, design, end.*

nōmĭnā-tim, adv. [nomin(a)-o, "to name"] *By name; expressly.*

non, adv. *Not* [ne-unum, "not one"].

non-nĭhil, n. indecl. [non, "not"; nihil, "nothing"] *Something.* As Adv.: *Somewhat, in some degree.*

non-dum, adv. [non, "not"; dum, "yet" *Not yet.*

non-nullus, nulla, nullum, adj. [non, "not"; nullus, "none"]. *Some.*

nō-nus, na, num, adj. [for nov-nus; fr. nŏv-em, "nine"] *Ninth.*

nō-sco (old form **gno-sco**), vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. a.: In present tense and derivatives: *To acquire a knowledge of; to come to know.* In perfect tense and derivatives: *To have acquired a knowledge of; to know* [akin to γνω, root of γι-γνώ-σκω.

nos-ter, tra, trum, pron. poss. [nos] *Our, our own, ours.* As Subst.: **nostri**, ōrum, m. plur. *Our men.*

nostri, ōrum; see noster.

nōtus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of nosco. Pa.: *Known, well known.*

nŏvissĭmus, a, um, sup. adj. [nŏvus, "new"] ("Newest"; hence) Of time: *The last, latest.*

nŏv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [id.] *Newness. Novelty, unusualness, strangeness.*

nŏvus, a, um, adj. *New*: novae res, *a change in the state, a revolution.* Sup.: nŏvissĭmus [akin to Gr. νέος.]

nox, noctis, f. *Night*; for media nox see medius [see noco].

nūd-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [nūd-us] With Abl.: *To strip of.*

n-ullus, ulla, ullum, adj. [for ne-ullus: fr. nĕ, "not"; ullus, "any"] *Not any, none, no.*

nŭm-ĕrus, ĕri, m. *A number. Multitude, quantity*, etc. [akin to νέμ-ω, "to distribute"].

nunt-ĭo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. [nunti-us] *To carry* or *bring intelligence about; to announce.*

nun-tĭus, tĭi m. [perhaps contracted fr. nov-ven-tĭus; fr. nŏv-us, "new"; vĕn-io, "to come"] *A bearer of news* or *tidings; a messenger, courier*, etc. *News* or *tidings; a message.*

nū-tus, tūs, m. [nū-o, "to nod"] ("A nodding"; hence) *Command, will.*

O.

ob, prep. gov. acc. ("Towards, at"; hence) To indicate object or cause: *On account of, for* [akin to ἐπ-ί].

obliqu-e, adv. [obliqu-us, "sidelong, oblique"] *Sideways, athwart, obliquely.*

obses, ĭdis, m. and f. [for obsid-s; fr. obsid-ĕo, "to stay, or remain," any where] *A hostage.*

ob-sĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, sĭdēre, 2. v. a. [for obsĕdĕo; fr. ŏb, "at or over against"; sĕdĕo, "to sit down"] Of a road: *To beset, block up, stop.*

obsĭd-ĭo, ĭōnis, f. [obsĭd-ĕo, "to invest" a place] *An investment* of a place; *a blockade, siege.*

ob-tempĕro, tempĕrāvi, tempĕrātum, tempĕrāre, 1. v. n. [ŏb, "in accordance with"; tempĕro, "to regulate one's self"] Dat.: *To comply with, to conform* or *submit to; to obey.*

ob-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for ob-tĕnĕo, fr. ŏb, "without force"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold* or *occupy. To acquire, get possession of, obtain.*

occā-sĭo, sĭōnis, f. [for occadsio; fr. occid-o, "to fall out or happen"] *An opportunity, occasion.*

occā-sus, sūs, m. [for occad-sus; fr. occid-o, "to set"] Of the sun: *The setting* or *going down.*

oc-cīdo, cīdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for ob-caedo; fr ŏb, "against"; caedo, "to strike"] ("To strike to the ground"; hence) *To cut down, kill, slay, slaughter.*

occŭpā-tĭo, tĭōnis, f. [occup(a)-o] *An occupation, employment.*

occŭpātus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of occŭpo. Pa.: *Busy, engaged, occupied.*

oc-cŭp-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ob-cap-o: fr. ob, "without force"; CAP, root of căp-io, "to take"] *To take* or *lay hold of, to seize.*

oc-curro, curri (rarely oc-cucurri), cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [for ob-curro; fr. ŏb, "up or towards"; curro, "to run"] *To run up. To fall in with, encounter.*

ocĕănus, i. m. *The ocean*: mare oceanum, (*the sea-ocean*, i.e) *the Atlantic,*

in contradistinction to the Mediterranean, [ὠκεανός].

ōc-ior, ius, comp. adj. *Swifter* [ὠκ-ύς].

octo, num. adj. indecl. Eight [ὀκτώ].

oct-in-gent-i, ae, a. num. adj. plur. [for oct-in-cent-i; fr. oct-o, "eight"; (in) epenthetic: cent-um, "a hundred"] *Eight hundred.*

octō-dĕcim, num. adj. indecl. [for octo-decem; fr. octo, "eight"; decem, "ten"] *Eighteen.*

octō-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Eight-tens"; hence) *Eighty* [octo; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

ŏc-ŭlus, ŭli, m. ("The seeing thing"; hence) *An eye* [akin to Gr. ὄκ-ος].

ōd-i, isse, v. defect. *To hate.*

offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offĕrre, v. a. irreg. [for ob-fĕro; fr. ŏb, "towards"; fĕro, "to bring"] *To present, offer,*

of-fic-ium, ii, n. [for op-făc-ium; fr. (ops) ŏp-is, "aid"; făcio, "to perform," etc.] *A service* incumbent on one; *a duty, office.*

omn-ino, adv. [omn-is] *Altogether, wholly.* With numerals: *In all.*

omnis, e, adj.: Sing.: **a.** Of a class: *Every, all. The whole of; all.* Plur.: *All.* As Subst.: **omnes**, ium, comm. gen. plur. *All persons, all.* **omnia**, um, n. plur. *All things, every thing.*

ŏnĕr-ārius, āria, ārium, adj. [ŏnŭs, ŏnĕr-is, "a burden"] *Of or belonging to, a burden*: navis oneraria, *a ship of burden,* i. e. *a merchantman*; see navis.

ŏnus, ĕris, n. *A burden, load.*

ŏpin-io, iōnis, f. [ŏpīn-or, "to think"] *Opinion, supposition, belief, notion, idea.*

ŏport-et, ŭit, ēre (only in 3rd person and Inf. mood), 2. v. n. *(It) is necessary, fit, proper, right*; *(it) behoves.*

oppidum, i, n. *A town.*

opportūn-e, adv. [opportunus, "seasonable"] *Seasonably, opportunely.*

opportūn-itas, itātis, f. [opportūnus] *Convenience, suitableness, fitness. An advantage,*

op-port-ūnus, ūna, ūnum, adj. [for ob-port-ūnus; fr. ŏb, "over against"; port-us, "a harbour"] *Convenient, fit, suitable, seasonable, opportune.*

op-prĭmo, pressi, pressum, prĭmĕre, 3. v. a. [for ob-prĕmo; fr. ŏb, "against"; prĕmo, "to press"] *To crush, overwhelm, overpower.*

optimus, a, um, sup. adj. *Best*

oppugnā-tio, tiōnis, f. [oppugn(a)-o] *An attack, assault.*

op-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [for ob-pugno; fr. ŏb, "against"; pugno, "to fight"] *To attack, lay siege to, besiege,* a city.

ŏpus, ĕris, n.: *Work, labour. A work* or *building. A military work.*

ŏpus (only in Nom. and Acc.), n. indecl. *Need, necessity.* As adj. with sum: *Needful, necessary.*

ōra, ae, f. *The coast, sea-coast.*

ōrā-tio, tiōnis, f. [or(a)-o, "to speak"] *A speech* or *oration.*

ōrā-tor, tōris, m. [id.] *An ambassador* charged with an oral message.

orb-is, is, m. *A circle* or *ring.*

ord-o, inis, m. [ord-ior, "to weave"] *Arrangement, order. A line, rank,* of soldiers.

ŏr-ior, tus sum, iri, 3. and 4. v. dep. *To rise* [prob. akin to ὄρ-νυμι, "to stir up"].

ornā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [orn(a)-o, "to equip"] *Equipped, supplied, provided.*

ōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [os, ōr-is, "the mouth"] *To pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*

os-tendo, tendi, tensum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. [for obs-tendo; fr. obs (= ŏb), "before or over against"; tendo, "to stretch out"] *To show, exhibit, display. To declare, set forth, make known.*

ōvum, i, n. *An egg* [ὠFόν].

P.

pācātus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of pāco. Pa.: *Undisturbed, tranquil, in a state of peace.*

pāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pax, pāc-is, "peace"] *To bring into a state of peace* or *quietness*; *to tranquillize.*

pāgus, i, m. *A canton, district* of the Gauls or Germans.

pāl-us, ūdis, f. *A swamp, marsh* [hybrid word; for pal-ud-s; fr. πηλ-ος, "clay"; ūd-us, "wet, moist"].

par, paris, adj. *Equal.*

pārātus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of pāro. Pa.: *Ready furnished, fitted out, equipped.*

pār-i-es, ĕtis, m. *A wall* of a house [akin to Gr. περ-ί, "around"; i, root of ĕo, "to go"].

pār-o, āvi, ātum āre, 1. v. a. *To make,* or *get, ready; to prepare,* etc. [probably akin to φέρ-ω].

par-s, tis, f. *A part, piece, portion, share,* etc. *A quarter, direction.*

part-ĭor, ītus sum, īri, 4. v. dep. [pars, partis] *To part, share, divide.*

păr-um, adv. [akin to par-vus, "a little"] *Too little, not enough.* With adverbs: *not enough, not sufficiently*: parum diligenter, *not diligently enough, with not sufficient diligence.*

par-vus, va, vum, adj. [prob. akin to par-s] *Small, little.*

pas-sim, adv. [for pad-sim; fr. PAD, root of pando, "to spread out"] *Here and there, everywhere.*

pas-sus, sūs, m. [for pad-sus; fr. PAD, root of pando, "to spread out"] *A step or pace.* As a measure of length: *A pace* equal to five Roman feet; see mille.

păte-ē-făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. a. [păt-ĕo, "to lie open"; (e) connecting vowel; făcio, "to make"] *To open,* or *lay open.*

pătĕfīo, fĭĕri; see pătĕfăcio.

pătĭor, passus sum, păti, 3. v. dep. *To bear, endure, support, undergo. To allow, permit, suffer* [akin to παθ, root of πάσχω].

pauc-ĭtas, ītātis, f. [pauc-us] *A small number; small numbers.*

paucus, a, um, adj. Sing.: *Small,* whether in size or extent. Plur.: *Few.*

paul-ātim, adv. [paul-us, "little"] *By little and little; by degrees, gradually.*

paul-isper, adv. [id] *For a little while, for a short time.*

paul-o, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of paul-us, "a little"] *By a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulŭl-um, adv. [Adverbial neut. of paulŭs-us, "very little"] *Just a little; a very little; a little* or *somewhat.*

paul-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paul-us, "little"] *A little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f. [for pac-s; fr. root PAC, or PAG, whence păc-iscor, "to bind, to covenant"; pango, "to fasten"] *Peace.*

pĕc-us, ŏris, n. In collective force: *Cattle*, as tied up in stalls [akin to PAG, "to tie": cp. πήγνυμι; pango: English, *fix.*

pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [pes, pĕd-is "a foot"] *Of the breadth of a foot; a foot wide* or *broad.*

pĕd-es, ĭtis, m. [for pĕd-i-ts: fr. pes, pĕd-is, "a foot"; I, root of ĕo, "to go"] ("One that goes on foot"; hence) *A foot-soldier.* Plur.: *Infantry.*

pĕdĭtā-tus, tūs, m. [pĕdit(a)-o, "to go on foot"] *Foot-soldiers, infantry.*

pĕd-ester, estris, estre, adj. [id] *On foot, that goes on foot*: pĕdestres copiae, *foot-soldiers, infantry. On,* or *by, land; land-.*

pell-is, is, f. *A skin* or *hide.* Mostly plur.: As made of skins: *A tent* [akin to πέλλ-α, "a hide"].

pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. ("To cause to go", hence) *To rout, beat, put to flight* [akin to root PAL, "to go"].

per, prep. gov. acc. *Through, through the midst of. Through, by, by means of.*

per-curro, cŭcurri or curri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [per, "along"; curro, "to run"] *To run along.*

perd-ĭtus, ĭta, ĭtum, adj. [perd-o, "to destroy"] *Ruined, desperate, of desperate fortunes.*

per-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead, bring* or *conduct* to a place. *To bring over* to a view, course.

pĕr-ĕo, ĭvi, or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. irreg. [pĕr, "through"; ĕo, "to go"] *To perish, lose one's life, die.*

pĕr-ĕquĭto, ĕquĭtāvi, ĕquĭtātum, ĕquĭtāre, 1. v. n. [pĕr, "through"; ĕquito, "to ride"] *To ride through; to ride hither and thither.*

per-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [pĕr, "without force"; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, bring, carry, convey.*

per-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for per-făcio; fr. per, "completely"; făcio, "to make"] *To finish, complete.*

perfĭd-ĭa, ĭae, f. [perfĭd-us, "faithless"] *Faithlessness, treachery, perfidy.*

perfŭg-a, ae, m. [perfŭg-io, "to desert"] *A deserter* to the enemy.

perfŭgĭ-um, i, n. [perfŭgi-o, "to flee for refuge"] *A place of refuge; a refuge.*

per-go, rexi, rectum, gĕre, 3. v. n. [for per-rĕgo; fr. per, "completely"; rĕgo, "to make straight"] *To proceed, go, set out.*

pĕrī-cŭlum, cŭli, n. obsol. pĕri-or, "to try"] *Danger, hazard, peril.*

pĕrī-tus, ta, tum, adj. [obsol. pĕri-or, "to try"] With Gen.: *Acquainted with, skilled in.*

per-mănĕo, mansi, mansum, mănēre, 2. v. n. [per, "to the end"; măneo] *To stay to the end; to continue, endure, remain.*

per-mitto, misi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [pĕr, "through"; mitto, "to let go"] With Dat.: *To give leave,* or *permission, to; to permit* or *allow.*

per-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre,

2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; mŏvĕo] *To disturb, disquiet. To influence, induce.*

per-mulcĕo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcēre, 2. v. a. [per, "all over"; mulcĕo, "to stroke"] *To soothe.*

per-paucus, pauca, paucum, adj. [pĕr, "very"; paucus, "little"] Sing.: *Very little.* Plur.: *Very few.*

perpend-ĭcŭlum, ĭcŭli, n. [perpend-o, "to weigh *or* examine carefully"] *A plumb-line, plummet*: ad perpendiculum, *(according to the plumb-line,* i.e.) *perpendicularly.*

per-pĕt-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. *Constant, perpetual.* Adverbial expression: In perpetuum, *for ever* [pĕr, "through"; root PET, akin to [illegible], "to lie open"].

per-spĭcĭo, spexi, spectum, spicĕre, 3. v. a. [for per-spĕcio; fr. per, "thoroughly"; spĕcio, "to see"] *To perceive, observe.*

per-suādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, suādēre, 2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; suādĕo, "to advise"] With Dat. *To persuade; to induce, prevail upon.* Phrase: Persuasum sibi aliquid habere, *to be persuaded of a thing.*

per-terrĕo, terrŭi, territum, terrēre, 2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; terrĕo, "to frighten"] *To frighten thoroughly; to strike with terror, terrify greatly.*

per-tĭnĕo, tinŭi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. n. [for per-tĕnĕo; fr. pĕr, "thoroughly"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To reach,* or *extend,* to a place. *To belong, relate* or *have reference* to.

perturbā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [perturb(a)-o, "to disturb utterly"] *Confusion, utter confusion.*

per-turbo, turbāvi, turbātum, turbāre, 1. v. a. [per, "utterly"; turbo, "to disturb"] *To disturb utterly, to throw into great confusion. To discompose, embarrass.*

per-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. n. [pĕr, "quite"; vĕnio, "to come"] *To reach* or *arrive; to come up,* etc.

pes, pĕd-is, m. [("The going thing"; hence) *A foot* [akin to πούς, ποδ-ός; and to Sans. *pad,* fr. root PAD, "to go"]

pĕt-o, ivi *and* ii, ītum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To seek*: i.e.: *To look* or *search after. To beg, solicit, entreat* [akin to Sans. root PAT, "to fly"].

pīl-us, i. m. (mostly with primus): *The division of the triarii in the Roman army*: primi pili centurio, *centurion of the first maniple of the triarii,* i.e. *chief centurion of the legion* [fr. pīl-um, "a javelin," and so "that which has the *pilum*"].

piscis, is, m. *A fish.*

plăc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n.: *To be pleasing* or *agreeable; to please.* Impers.: With Dat.: Placuit, *it pleased* or *seemed good to; it was resolved* or *determined by.*

plān-e, adv. [plān-us, "plain, clear"] *Plainly, clearly, evidently, certainly.*

plānĭor, us; see plānus.

plān-ĭtĭes, ĭtiēi, f. [plān-us] *Level ground; a plain.*

plān-us, a, um, adj. *Flat, level, plain.* Comp.: planior.

plēn-e, adv. [plēn-us] *Fully, completely.*

plē-nus, na, num, adj. [plē-o, "to fill"] *Filled, full.* In superl. of a legion: *Having its entire complement.*

plērumque, adv. [adverbial neut. of plērusque, "the greater part of"] *For the most part, generally.*

plērusque, plērăque, plērumque, ad: [a strengthened form of plērus, "very many"] Rare in sing.: *The larger,* or *greater part of; the majority.*

plurĭm-um, sup. adv. [adverbial neut. of plūrĭm-us] *Very much; in a very great degree, exceedingly.*

plū-rĭmus, rĭma, rĭmum, sup. adj. [PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill"; (i) connecting vowel; simus, superl. suffix := ple-i-simus; changed as follows: plei-simus, pli-simus, ploi-simus, ploi-rŭmus, plū-rimus] Sing.: *Very much.* Plur.: *Very many, most numerous.*

plūs, plūris (Plur. **plūres**, plūra), comp. adj. [contr. and changed fr. ple-or; PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill"; comparative suffix "or"] *More.*

plus, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of 1. plus] *More.*

poen-ĭtĕo, ĭtŭi, no supine, ĭtēre, 2. v. a. intens. In classical authors only impers.: *It repents* or *grieves one* [poenio = pun-io, "to punish"].

poll-ex, ĭcis, m. [poll-ĕo, "to be powerful"] Of the hand: *A thumb;* as a measure connected with digitus.

pol-lĭcĕor, licitus sum, licēri, 2. v. dep. a. *and* n. [for pot-licĕor; fr. inseparable prefix pŏt, "much"; licĕor, "to bid" at an auction] *To hold forth,* or *promise, a thing.*

pollĭcĭtā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [pollicit(a)-or, "to promise"] *A p[illegible], a promise.*

pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏs[illegible]ōnĕre, 3. v. a. [usually regarded a[illegible]ted fr. posino (i.e. po, ins[illegible]rable [illegible] with augmentative force [illegible] let down") "to let down q[illegible] rather fr. a root POS] *To pu[illegible],* or *set.*

pon-s, tis, [illegible] *A bridge* [fr. roo[illegible]

PATH (=PAD), "to go": cp. pes (=péds); passus (=padsus); ποῦς, πάτος].

pŏ-pŭl-us, i. m. *The people* [probably for po'-pol-us; fr. πολ-ύς ("many"), reduplicated].

por-ta, tae, f. *A gate* of a camp [probably from root PER or POR, found in περάω, "to pass through"; πόρ-ος, "a way"].

portor-ĭum, ii, n. [obsol. portor = portitor, "a carrier"] *A toll* or *impost*, paid on goods carried through a country.

por-tus, tūs, m. [akin to por-ta] *A harbour, haven, port.*

pŏsĭtus, a um: P. perf. pass. of pōno. Pa.: *Placed, lying, situate.*

posses-sĭo, siōnis, f. [for possed-sio; fr. possĭdĕo, "to possess," *Possession, occupation.*

pos-sĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, sĭdēre, 2. v. a. [for pot-sĕdĕo; fr. pŏt (inseparable prefix), "much"; sĕdĕo, "to sit"] *To have and hold; to be master of; to own* or *possess. To take,* or *hold, possession of.*

possum, pŏtŭi, no sup., posse, v. n. irreg. [for pot-sum; fr. pŏt-s, "able"; sum, "to be"] *To be able,* or *power*[...]; *to have power* to do, *etc.*, something; (*I, you, he,* etc.) *can*: se plurimum posse, *that they were exceedingly powerful*; quam plurimas possunt, *as many as they are able.*

post, adv. *and* prep. [perhaps contracted from pōne "behind") est] Adv.: Of time: *Afterwards, after, later.* Prep. gov. acc.: Of time: *After, subsequent to.*

post-ĕa, adv. [probably for post-eam; *i.e.* post, "after"; ĕam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this," "that"] *After this* or *that*; *afterwards* In combination with quam, or as one word: *After that.*

postĕā-quam; see postea.

post-ĕrus, ĕra, ĕrum, adj. [post] *Coming after, following, next.*

post-quam, adv. (also written as two words, post quam) [post, "after": quam, "that"] *After that, when.*

pŏtes-tas, tātis, f. [for pŏtent-tas; fr. pŏtens, pŏtent-is, "powerful"] *Power. A possibility, opportunity*: potes-tatem facere, *to give,* or *present, an opportunity.*

pŏt-ĭor, ītus sum, īri, 4. v. dep. [pŏt-is, "powerful"] With Abl.: *To become master of: to obtain, get possession of.*

postr-ĭ-dĭe, adv. [contr. fr. postĕr-i-die; *i.e.* postĕr-o die; the respective ablatives of postĕr-us, "following"; dies, "day"; with (i) connecting vowel] *On the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.*

postŭlā-tum, ti, n. [postul(a)-o] Mostly plur.: *A thing demanded; a demand.*

postŭlo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [usually considered akin to posco] *To ask, demand, request, require, desire.*

prae-ăcūtus, ăcūta, ăcūtum, adj. [prae, "before"; ăcūtus, "sharp"] *Sharp towards,* or *at the end; sharp at the point.*

prae-bĕo, bŭi, bĭtum, bēre, 2. v. a. [contracted fr. prae-hăbĕo; fr. prae, "before"; hăbĕo, "to have or hold"] *To give, furnish, supply. To afford, cause, produce, give rise to,* etc.

prae-cep-s, cĭpĭtis, adj. [for prae-capit-s; fr. prae, "before"; căput, căpit-is, "the head"] Of localities: *Steep, precipitous.*

praecĭpĭt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [praeceps, praecĭpĭt-is, "headlong"] With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To cast one's self headlong.*

praeda, ae, f. *Booty, spoil, plunder.*

prae-dĭco, dĭcāvi, dĭcātum, dĭcāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "publicly"; dĭco, "to proclaim"] *To proclaim publicly; to declare, publish, announce.*

prae-dor, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [praed-a, "plunder"] *To plunder, spoil, pillage,* etc.

praefec-tus, ti, m. [for praefac-tus, fr. praefĭcĭo] *A prefect, commander,* etc.

prae-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for prae-făcĭo, fr. prae, "before"; făcĭo, "to make"] *To set,* or *place, over; to appoint to the command of.*

prae-m-ĭum, ii, n. [for prae-ĕm-ĭum; fr. prae, "beyond or above"; ĕm-o, "to take"] *Reward.*

prae-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; mitto, "to send"] *To send before* or *forwards; to send in advance.*

prae-păro, părāvi, părātum, părāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "beforehand"; păro, "to get ready"] *To get ready beforehand; to prepare.*

prae-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; rumpo, "to break"] *To break off before* or *in front.*

prae-ser-tim, adv. [prae, "before"; sĕr-o, "to arrange"] *Especially, particularly.*

praesĭd-ĭum, ii, n. [praesĭdĕo, "to sit before"; hence, "to guard"] *Defence, protection.*

prae-sto, stĭti, stĭtum, stāre, 1. v. n. [prae, "before"; sto, "to stand"] *To be superior; to surpass, have the advantage.*

prae-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [prae, "before"; sum, "to be"] With Dat. *To be set over; to have the charge,* or *command of.*

prae-ter, prep. gov. acc. [prae, "before"; demonstrative suffix ter] Of expectation: *Against, contrary to.* Of degree: *Beyond, above, more than.*

praeter-ĕā, adv. for praeteream; fr. praeter, "beyond"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is, "this"] *Besides, moreover, further.*

praeter-mitto, misi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [praeter, "past"; mitto, "to allow to go"] *To pass by* or *over.*

prĕmo, pressi, pressum, prĕmĕre, 3. v. a. In war: *To press hard* or *close. To press upon, pursue closely. To vex, harass, beset* with difficulties.

prĕ-tium, tii, n. *Price, cost* [akin to πριάσθαι, "to buy"].

pri-die, adv. [for prae-die; fr. prae, "before"; die, abl. sing. of diēs, "day"] *On the day before.*

prim-o, prim-um, adv. [prim-us, "first"] *At first, in the first place.*; quum primum, (*when first,* i.e.) *as soon as.*

prim-um: see primo.

pri-mus, ma, mum, sup. adj. [for prae-mus; fr. prae, "before"; with superlative suffix mus] Of order: *First, the first.* Of rank, station, estimation: *The first, chief, principal, most distinguished* or *eminent.* Adverbial expression: In primis (also written as one word, imprimis or imprimis), *Chiefly, expressly, particularly.*

princeps, ĭpis, m. [princeps, "chief"] *A chieftain, prince.*

prior, us, comp. adj. [for prae-or; fr. prae, "before" with comp. suffix or] *Former, prior*; often to be translated *first.*

pris-tĭnus, tĭna, tĭnum, adj. [obsol. pris, "before"] *Former, previous.*

prīvātus, a, um, adj.: *A private person.*

prius, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of prior, "before"] *Before, sooner*: prius quam (or, as one word, priusquam), *sooner than, before that.*

prō, prep. gov. abl.: *Before. Instead of, in the place of, for. As, just as, for. In proportion to. Conformably to, considering.*

prŏb-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [prŏb-us, "good"] *To esteem,* or *regard, as good; to approve of.*

pro-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [pro, "forward"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go forwards, to advance.*

prō-consul, consŭlis, m. [pro, "for, in the place of"; consul, "a consul"] *A proconsul*; one who at the end of his consulship at Rome was appointed governor of a province, or commander of an army.

prŏcul, adv. [pro, "forward": root KEL, "to drive", cp. κέλομαι.] Of place: *At a distance, far off.*

prō-cumbo, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, cumbĕre, 3. v. n. [prō, "forwards"; obsol. cumbo, "to lie down"] *To lean* or *incline forwards.*

prō-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forth *or* forwards"; do, "to put"] *To give up; to betray.*

prō-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forward"; dūco] *To lead forth* or *out.*

proeli-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [proeli-um, "a battle"] *To join battle, engage in battle, battle, fight.*

proelium, ii, n. *A battle, engagement.*

prōficio, fēci, fectum, ficĕre, 3. v. n. [for prō-făcio; fr. pro, "forward"; făcio] *To profit.*

prŏ-fic-iscor, fectus sum, ficisci, 3. v. dep. n. inch. [pro, "forwards"; făc-io, "to make"] *To set out, go, proceed.*

prō-flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [pro, "forth"; flŭo, "to flow"] *To flow forth.*

prŏ-fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. n. [pro, "before"; fŭgio] *To flee* or *run away.*

prō-grĕ-dior, gressus sum, grĕdi, 3. v. dep. [for pro-gradior; from pro, "forth *or* forward"; gradior, "to step *or* go"] *To step,* or *go, forth* or *forward; to advance, proceed.*

prŏ-hĭbĕo, hĭbŭi, hĭbĭtum, hĭbēre, 2. v. a. [for prŏ-hăbĕo; fr. prŏ, "before"; hăbĕo, "to hold"] *To hinder, restrain, prevent.*

prō-jĭcio, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for prō-jăcio; fr. prō, "forwards"; jăcio, "to cast"] *To cast* or *throw forwards.*

prō-mont-ōrium, ōrii, n. [pro, "before"; mons, mont-is, "a mountain"] *A headland, promontory.*

prom-ptus, pta, ptum, adj. [prōm-o, "to bring forth"] *Ready, forward, prompt.*

prō-nuntĭo, nuntĭāvi, nuntĭātum, nuntĭāre, 1. v. a. [pro, "openly"; nuntio, "to announce"] *To make known, proclaim. To spread* anything *in public*; *to recite, rehearse, deliver.*

prōnus, a, um, adj. Of things: *Inclined downwards, bending forwards* [πρηνής].

prŏpe, adv. *and* prep. [adverbial neut. of obsol. adj. propis, "near"] Adv.: *near.* Comp.: prŏp-ius, *Nearer.* Prep. gov. acc.: *Near.* ☞ (for no. 1.) Comp.: prop-ius; (Sup.: proxime = prop-sime).

prō-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [prō, "forwards"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive forwards* or *before one's self.*

prŏpinqu-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [prŏpinquus] *Neighbourhood.*

prŏp-inqu-us, a, um, adj. [for prŏp-hinc-us; fr. prŏp-e; hinc, "from this place"] *Near, neighbourhood, nigh at hand, close.*

prŏpius; see prope.

prō-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "before"; pōno, "to put"] *To put place,* or *set before* a person; *to mention, make known, show.*

prop-ter, prep. gov. acc. [obsolete adj. prŏp-is, "near"] *On account,* or *by reason, of*; *because of.*

proptĕr-ĕā, adv. [for propter-eam: fr. propter; eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this *or* that"] *On this,* or *that, account*; *therefore*: propterea quod, *because that.*

prōra, ae, f. *The fore part of a ship*; *the prow* (πρῶρα).

pro-rŭo, rŭi, rŭtum, rŭĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "in front"; rŭo, "to cast down"] *To overthrow, throw down.*

prō-sĕquor, sĕquūtus *or* sĕcūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [prō, "forwards"; sĕquor, "to follow"] *To follow after, pursue.*

prō-vĕho, vexi, vectum, vĕhĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forwards"; vĕho, "to carry"] *To carry forwards.*

prō-vĭdĕo, vīdi, visum, vĭdēre, 2. v. n. *and* a. [pro; vĭdĕo, "to see"] Neut.: [prō, "forwards *or* before"] *To take care.* Impers. Pass.: **provisum erat (esset)**, *Care had been taken*: with de, at ch. 3; with Dat. at ch. 18. Act.: [prō, "beforehand"] *To make provision,* or *preparation, for*; *to provide for.*

Prōvincia, ae, f. ("A province"; hence, as applied to Gaul) *The Roman province* of Gaul; called in later times Gallia Braccata, and Gallia Narbōnensis.

proxĭm-e, sup. adv. [proxĭm-us] *Very recently, shortly before.*

proxĭmus, a um, sup. adj. [= procsĭmus, for prop-sĭmus; for obsol. propis, "near"; superlative suffix sĭmus] Of place: *Nearest, next, very near* or *close*: with Dat. and Acc. Of time: *The next,* whether before or after; *the following.*

publĭc-ē, adv. [public-us, "public"] *Publicly.*

pŭ-er, ĕri, m. *A boy, lad* [root PU, "to beget": cp. παῖς].

pug-na, nae, f. [root PUG, whence pung-o, "to puncture *or* stab"] *A fight* hand to hand: *a battle, engagement.*

pugnans, ntis, P. pres. of pungo.—As Subst. m.: *A combatant.*

pūgn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v.n. [pugn-a] *To fight.* Impers. Pass.: Of a continued action: pugnārētur, *the battle was carried on, the fight was continued.* Of a mere statement of what was done: pugnatum est, *the battle was waged.*

pulvis, ĕris, m. *Dust.*

pur-go, gāvi, gātum, gāre, 1. v. a. [pur-us, "clean"] *To clear* or *free,* from a fault, *to exculpate.*

puppis, is (Acc. *and* Abl. Sing. mostly puppim and puppi), f. *The stern* or *poop* of a ship.

pŭt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pŭt-us, "clean, clear"] *To deem, hold, think, imagine, suppose.*

Q

quadrāg-ēni, ēnae, ēna, (Gen. Plur. quadragenûm, num. distrib. adj. [for quadrāgint-ēni; fr. quadrāgint-a, "forty"] *Forty each, forty.*

quadr-ā-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Four tens"; *i.e.*) *Forty* [contr. fr. quătŭor-a-ginta; fr. quătŭor; (a) connecting vowel; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

quadr-i-n-gent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [changed fr. quatuor-i-n-cent-i; fr. quatuor, "four"; (i), (n); cent-um, "a hundred"] *Four hundred.*

quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, quaerĕre, 3, v. a.: *To seek. To ask, enquire.*

quaes-tor, tōris, m. [quaero, through root QUAES] *A quaestor*; a Roman magistrate.

quam, adv. [adverbial acc. fem. of quis] *In what manner, as, how, how much, as much as.* Particular uses: After comp. words: *Than*: see prius. With superl. and possum: *As much* (or *little*) *as possible.* After designation of time: *That.*

quam-prīmum: *As soon as possi-*
ble.

quam-vis, conj. [quam, "as"; vis, 2. pers. pres. indic. of volo, "to wish"] Adv.: *As you will.* Conj. *However, although, though.*

quan-do, adv. [for quam-do] *At what time soever; at any time, ever*: si quando, *if at any time.*

quant-um, adv. [quant-us] *As much as, as far as.*

qua-ntus, nta, ntum, adj.: *How great, how much. As great as, as much as*; in neut. with Gen. of thing measured.

quar-tus, ta, tum, num. adj. [contr. fr. quatuor-tus, fr. quatuor, "four"] *Fourth.*

quătŭor, num, adj. indecl. *Four* [akin to τέσσαρ-ες, τέτταρες].

que, enclitic conj. *And*: que..que, *both...and; as well ... as; partly,... partly* [akin to τε].

quem-ad-mŏdum (or separately quem ad modum) adv. [ad, "after or according to"; with the acc. sing. of qui, "who, which"; mŏdus, "manner"] *After what manner, how.*

quĕror, questus sum, quĕri, 3. v. dep. *To complain* [root QUES or QUER, "to sigh"].

qui, quae, quod, pron.: Relative: *Who, which, what, that.* At the beginning of a clause instead of a conj. and demonstr. pron.: *And this.* With Subj.: To point out a purpose, etc.: *For the purpose of; that; in order to* or *that; to* With ellipse of demonstrative pron.: *He,* or *she, who; that which.* **Quo**, abl. sing. neut. with comparatives: *By how much*: ..quo..hoc, *by how much..by so much; the..the.* Interrogative: In indirect clauses: *What, what sort of.*

qui-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, pron. rel. [qui; suffix cumque] *Whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever.*

quidam, quae-dam, quod-dam, pron. indef. [qui (see qui no. 2); suffix dam] *Particular, certain; some* indefinite person or thing.

quidem, adv. *Indeed, even*; ne quidem, *not even.*

quiēt-us, a, um, adj. [quiesco, "to be quiet," through root KI, "to lie": cp. κεῖμαι] *Quiet, calm, tranquil.*

qui-n, conj. [for qui-ne; fr. qui, abl. of rel. pron qui, "who, which"; ne = non] With Subj.: *That not, but that.*

quin-ĕtiam, conj. [or, as two words; quin, "but, indeed": etiam. "too"] *But indeed to; yea too, moreover.*

quinque, num adj. indecl. *Five* [akin to Gr. πέντε].

quinqu-ā-ginta, num. [quinque, "five"; (ā) connecting vowel; ginta = κοντα, "ten"] *Fifty.*

quin-tus, ta, tum, num. adj. [for quinqu-tus; fr. quinqu-e, "five"] *Fifth.*

quis, quae, quid, pron. interrog.: In indirect questions: *Who* or *what*; i. e. *what person* or *thing.* As Subst. n.: **quid**, *What thing, what* [τίς].

quis-quam, quae, quum, quic-quam or quid-quam, pron. indef. [quis, "any one": suffix quam] *Any, any whatever.* As Subst. Masc.: *Any one, any body.* Neut.: *Any thing.*

quis-que, quae-que, quod-que, pron. indef. [quis, "any"; suffix que] *Each, every, any.*

quis-quis, no fem., quod-quod, or quid-quid, or quic-quid, pron. indef. [qui- reduplicated] *Whatever, whatsoever,* person or thing.

qui-vis, quae-vis, quod-vis, pron. indef. [qui, "who"; vis, 2. pers. sing. of volo] *Who,* or *what, you please* or *will; any whatever.*

quo, adv. [for quo-m, old form of que-m, acc. masc. sing of qui, "who"] *Whither, where. To the end that, in order that, so that, that.*

quŏ-ad, adv. [quom-ad; fr. quom (see 1. quo); prep. ad] *As long as. Till, until. As far as, to the extent that.*

quŏd, conj. [Adverbial acc. Neut. Sing. of qui] *In that, because that, inasmuch as. That.*

quō-mĭnus, conj. With Subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing. *That... not; from* doing.

quŏque, conj. *Also, too*:— placed after the word to be emphasized.

quoquo-versus, adv. [for quom-quom-versus; fr. quomquom = quem-quem, acc. sing. masc. of quis-quis, "whatever, whatsoever"; versus, "towards"] *In every direction.*

quŏtīdĭ-ānus, āna, ānum, adj. [quŏtīdie, "daily"] *Daily, every day.*

quŏt, num. adj. indecl. [akin to quot-us, "how many"] *How many. As many as.*

quŏt-annis, adv. (also as two words, quot annis) [quot, "as many"; of time, "each, every, all"; annis, Abl. Plur. of annus, as Abl. of time] *Every year, each year, yearly.*

quŏt-ī-dĭe, adv. [quot, "as many; each every"; (i) connecting vowel: die,

abl. of dies, "**day**"] *On each* or *every day; daily.*

quum (old form **quom**), rel. adv. *and* casual conj. [for quom = quem, fr. qui, "who"] Relative adv.: *When.* Phrases: quum ... tum, *while ... so too; not only ... but also; both ... and.* Casual conj.: *seeing that, since, as.*

R.

răpĭd-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [rapid-us, "swift, rapid"] *Swiftness, rapidity* of a stream.

rārus, a, um, adj. *Far apart; here and there; scattered,* or *occurring at intervals.*

ră-tĭo, tĭonis, f. rĕor, "to reckon," through root RA] *Course, mode of procedure, method.*

rĕbell-ĭo, ĭōnis, f. [rebell-o, "to renew war"] *A revolt, rebellion.*

rĕcep-tus, tūs, m. [for rĕcap-tus; fr. rĕcĭpĭo (folld. by personal pron. in reflexive force), in military language, "to betake o[illegible]'s self, *etc.*, back"; *i.e.* "to retire, retr[illegible]at"] *A retiring, retreat.*

rĕce[illegible]**ntis**, adj. *Fresh, recent.*

rĕ-cĭpĭ[illegible], [illegible]ēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for re-căpĭo; fr. rĕ, "back"; căpio, "to take"] *To take, or get, back; to re*[illegible]*over,* etc. With [illegible]nal pron. in reflexive force: *To d*[illegible] *b*[illegible]*ck* or *withdr*[illegible]; *to betake one's self. To rec*[illegible] *one's self.*

rĕ-cŭp-ĕro, ĕrāvi, [illegible], erāre, 1. v. a. [for re-cap-ero; fr. rĕ, [illegible]ck again"; căp-ĭo, "to take"] *To recover, regain, obtain, back* or *again.*

rĕ-cūs-o, [illegible]vi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for re-caus-o; fr. re, "against"; caus-a, "a cause"] *To decline, refuse, shrink from.*

rĕd-ĕo, ĭvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. [red (=re), "back"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go* or *come back; to return.*

rĕd-ĭgo, ēgi, actum, ĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for rĕd-ăgo; fr. red (=re), "without force"; ăgo, "to lead"] With double Acc.: *To render* or *make*, an object something.

rĕd-intĕgro, intĕgrāvi, intĕgrātum, intĕgrāre, 1. v. a. [red (=re), "again"; integro, "to make whole"] "*To restore, renew.*

rĕdĭtus, ūs, n. m. [re, "back," eo, "to go"]: *A return.*

rĕ-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead* or *conduct, back.*

rĕ-fĕro, tuli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [re, "back" fero [illegible] see fero] *To bring* or *carry, ba*[illegible]*r backwards*: pedem referre, (*to carry* [illegible] *foot backwards*; i. e.) *to retire, retreat. To relate, mention.*

rĕ-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for re-făcĭo; fr. re, "again"; făcĭo, "to make"] *To refresh, recruit* persons, as to their strength. With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To refresh*, or *recruit, one's self* in any way.

rĕg-ĭo, ĭōnis, f. [rĕg-o, "to direct"]. *A tract, territory, region.*

rĕgo, rexi, rectum, regere, 3. v. a. Of ships: *To guide, direct, manage.*

reg-num, ni, n. [rego, "to rule"] *A kingdom.*

rĕ-linquo, lĭqui, lictum, linquĕre, 3 v. a. [rĕ; linquo, "to leave"] [re, "behind"] *To leave behind* in a place. [re, without force"] *To leave, go away from, quit. To forsake, abandon, give up.*

rĕlĭqu-us, a, um, adj. [relinquo, See above relinquo] *The remaining part*, or *rest, of* that denoted by the subst. to which it is joined. *The rest, the other.* As Subst.: **rĕlĭqui**, ōrum, m. plur. *The rest, the others.* **rĕlĭqua**, ōrum, n. plur. *The remaining*, or *other, things.*

rĕ-mănĕo, mansi, mansum, mănēre, 2. v. n.: [re, "back," mănēre, "to remain"]. *To remain behind.*

rēmex, ĭgis, m. [for rēmig-s, fr. rēmig-o, "to row"] *A rower, oarsman.*

rĕ-mĭgro, no perf. nor sup., mĭgrāre, 1. v. n. [re, "back"; migro "to go"] *To return.*

rĕ-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; mitto, "to send"] *To send back.*

rĕ-mollesco, no perf. nor sup., mollescĕre, 3. v. n. [re, "again"; mollesco, "to become soft"] *To be weakened* or *enervated.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [re, "back"; mŏveo, "to move"] *To remove, withdraw.*

rēmus, i. m. *An oar.*

rĕnŏvandus, a, um. Gerundive of rĕnŏvo.

rĕ-nŏvo, nŏvāvi, nŏvātum, nŏvāre, 1. v. a. [re, "again"; nŏvo, "to make new"] *To renew.*

rĕ-nuntĭo, nuntĭāvi, nuntĭātum, nuntĭāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back"; nuntĭo, "to bring word"] *To bring* or *carry, back word; to declare, report, announce.*

rĕ-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕr[illegible] v. a. [re, "b[illegible]"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive bac*[illegible] or *away; to repel, repulse.*

r[illegible]**pent-īnus**, īna, īnum, adj. [repens, rep[illegible]nt-is, "sudden"] *Sudden, unexpected.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, peri, pertum, perire, 4. v. a. [for re-părio; fr. re, "again"; părio, "to produce"] *To find out, discover, ascertain.*

rĕ-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry*, or *convey, back.*

rĕ-prĭmo, pressi, pressum, primere, 3. v. n. [for re-premo; fr. re, "back"; premo, "to press"] *To check, restrain.*

rĕ-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. n. [re, "against *or* in opposition"; pugno, "to fight"] *To resist*; *to make*, or *offer, resistance*; *to defend one's self.*

res, rĕi, f. *A thing, matter, affair* [akin to ῥῆ-μα, fr. ῥέω, "to speak"].

rĕ-scindo, scidi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "away"; scindo, "to cut"] *To cut away* or *to pieces*; *to break up* a bridge, *etc.*

rĕ-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back"; servo, "to keep"] *To keep back, reserve.*

rĕ-sisto, stiti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [re, "against"; sisto, "to stand"] *To withstand, resist, make opposition* or *resistance*; with Dat.

rĕ-spondĕo, spondi, sponsum, spondēre, 2. v. n. [re, "in return"; spondĕo, "to promise"] *To answer, reply.*

res-publica, rĕi-publicae, f. [res; publica (fem. of publicus), "public"] *The commonwealth, state.*

rĕ-tinĕo, tinŭi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for rĕ-tĕnĕo; fr. rĕ, "back"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, back*; *to detain.*

rĕ-vertor, versus sum, verti, 3. v. dep. [rĕ, "back"; vertor, "to turn one's self"] *To return.*

rĕ-vincio, vinxi, vinctum, vincire, 4. v. a [rĕ, "back"; vincio, "to bind"] *To bind, or fasten, back.*

rĕ-vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, vŏcāre, 1. v. a. [rĕ, "back"; vŏco, "to call"] *To call back, recal.*

rex, rēgis, m. [for reg-s; fr. reg-o, "to rule"] *A king.*

rīpa, ae, f. *The bank* of a river.

rō-b-ur, ŏris, n. *An oak*; *oak-wood* [probably akin to ῥω, root of ῥώ-ννυμι, "to strengthen"].

ros-trum, tri, n. [for rod-trum; fr. rōd-o, "to gnaw"] Of a ship: *The beak*, or *projecting prow.*

rŏt-a, ae, f. *A wheel.*

rūmor, ōris, m. *Report, common talk, rumour.*

rursus, adv. [contr. fr. rĕ-versus, "turned back"] *Back again; again, anew, afresh.*

S

saep-e, adv. [obsol. saep-is, "frequent"] *Frequently, often.* Comp.: saep-ius.

saev-ĭo, ivi *or* ii, itum, ire, 4. v. n. saev-us, "fierce"] *To rage, be furious.*

săgitta, ae, f. *An arrow.*

sălū-s, tis, f. [for salv-ts; fr. salv-ĕo, "to be well *or* in good health"] *Safety.*

sanc-tus, ta, tum, adj. [sancio, "to render, *or* make, sacred"; hence] *Sacred. venerable.*

sarc-ĭna, inae, f. [sarc-io, "to patch"] *Baggage* of an army.

sar-mentum, menti, n. [for sarp-mentum; fr. sarp-o, "to cut *or* lop off," *etc.*] Sing.: *A twig.* Plur.: *Brushwood, faggots.*

săt-is, adj. *and* adv.: 1. Adj. indecl.: *Sufficient*: Gen. of thing measured. Adv. *Sufficiently, enough.*

saucius, a, um, adj. *Wounded.* As Subst., m.: *A wounded man.*

saxum, i. n. *A detached portion of rock; a rock.*

scapha, ae, f. *A boat* or *skiff* [σκαφή (fr. σκάπ-τω, "to dig out"), "a dug-out"].

sĕcius; see secus.

scient-ĭa, iae, f. [sciens, scient-is, "knowing"] *Knowledge, skill.*

scindo, scidi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. *To tear* or *pull down* [root SCID, akin to σχίζω (=σχίδ-σω, "to cleave"].

scio, scivi *or* scii, scitum, scire, 4. v. a. *To know.*

sec-tūra, tūrae, f. [sĕc-o, "to cut"] ("A cutting"; hence) *A mine, diggings.*

sĕcund-um, prop. gov. acc. [sĕcund-us, "following"] *According to, in accordance with.*

sĕc-undus, unda, undum, adj. [for sequ-undus; fr. sĕqu-or] ("Following": hence) *Favourable, propitious, fortunate.*

sĕc-us, adv. [prob. for sĕqu-us; fr. sĕqu-or, "to follow"] In comp. with nihilo, (*less by nothing*; i e.) *none the less, nevertheless*; here nihilo is abl. of measure.

sed, conj. [same word as sed=sine, "without"] *But.*

sĕd-es, is, f. [sĕd-ĕo, "to sit"] *A dwelling-place, abode.*

sem-per adv. *Always* [akin to Gr.

ὁμ-ος, ὁμ-οῖος, "like"; Sans. *sum-a*, "same," also, "all, entire"].

sĕn-ātus, ātus, m. [senex, sĕn-is, "old man"] *The Senate*; i.e. *the council, or assembly, of elders*.

sentent-ia, iae, f. [for sentient-ia; fr. sentiens, sentient-is, "thinking"] *A way of thinking*; *an opinion sentiment*.

sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, 4. v. a. *To think, consider*: idem sentire, *to think the same thing*, i.e. *to be of the same opinion*.

sē-păro, părāvi, părātum, părāre, 1. v. a. [sē, "apart"; păro, "to put"] *To separate sever, disjoin*

sept-em, num. adj. indecl. *Seven* [akin to ἑπτ-ά].

septen-trio, triōnis (more frequently plur.) m. [for septem-trio; fr. septem; trio, "an ox," as that which is employed in tilling the earth] ("The seven plough-oxen"; hence the seven stars near the North Pole, called Charles's Wain, also the Great and Little Bear"; hence) *The North Pole, the North*. N.B.—According to Max Müller (*Lectures on Language*, second series, pp. 364, 365) the Roman idea of "seven oxen" is untenable. He regards "trio" as having been originally "strio"; fr. Sans. root STRI, "to strew *or* scatter," and so "a strewer (of light)" —a descriptive term for a star. According to this view "septentris means "seven stars"]

sept-imus, ima, imum, num. ord. adj. [sept-em] *Seventh*.

sept-ūā-ginta, num. adj. ("Seven tens": hence) *Seventy* [sept-em; (ua); ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

sĕqu-or, ūtus sum, i, 3. v. dep. *To follow. To follow in pursuit; pursue* [akin to Gr. ἕπομαι].

serv-io, ivi, *or* ii, itum, ire, 4. v. n. [serv-us, "a slave"] Of reports, *etc.*: With Dat. *To be the slave of*; *to have regard or care for*; *to pay attention, to heed*.

serv-itus, itūtis, f. [serv-us, "a slave"] *Slavery, servitude*.

serv-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To protect, preserve, keep in safety*.

sesqui-pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [sesqui, "one half more"; pes, pĕd-is, "a foot" in length] *A foot and a half long, wide*, etc.

sex, num. adj. indecl. *Six* [ἕξ].

sex-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [sex, "six"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Six hundred*.

si, conj. *If* [εἰ].

si-c, adv. [for si-ce; akin to hic; with suffix ce] *In this way; so, thus: in the following manner*.

sicc-itas, itātis, f. [sicc-us, "dry"] *Dryness*.

sign-i-fic-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for sign-i-fac-o; fr. sign-um, "a sign"; (i) connecting vowel; fac-io, "to make"] *To mean designate*.

signum, i. n. *A signal*.

silva, ae, f. *A wood, forest* [akin to ὕλFη].

sim-ŭl, adv. [fr. same origin as semper]. *Together, at once, at the same time*.

sine, prep. gov. abl. [akin to sē, "apart; without"] *Without*.

singill-ātim, adv. [obsol. singill-us, dim. of singŭl-us, "individual"] *Individually*.

sin-gŭli, gulae, gŭla (rare in sing.), num. distrib. adj. *Separate, single* [akin to εἷς, ἑν-ός, "one"].

sino, sivi, situm, sinĕre, 3. v. a. *To allow, permit, suffer*.

si-tus, tūs, m. [si-no, "to place"] *A situation, site*.

si-ve, conj. [si, "if"; ve, "or"] *Or, if, whether*: sive..sive, *be it that..or that*; *if..or if*; *whether..or*.

sŏcius, ii, m. *An ally, confederate*.

sōl, sōlis, m. *The sun* [akin to Gr. ἥλ-ιος; Sans. *svar*].

soldūrius, ii, m. *A retainer* of a chieftain; *a soldier* [Keltic word].

sōl-itūdo, itūdinis, f. [sōl-us, "alone"] *Loneliness, solitariness*: *a lonely state*.

sollicit-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a [sollicit-us, "greatly moved *or* tossed"] In a bad sense: *To urge, instigate*, etc.

sōl-um, adv. [sōl-us, "alone"] *Only, merely*.

so-lvo, lvi, lūtum, luvere, 3. v. a. [for sē-lŭo; fr. sē, "apart"; lŭo, "to loosen"] *To loosen, unloose*: solvere navem, (*to loosen the ship*; i.e.) *to weigh anchor, set sail*.

spătium, ii, n.: *Extent. Distance, interval*. Of time, wherein to do anything: *Space, interval* [σπάδιον, Æolic form of στάδιον].

spĕci-es, ēi, f. [spĕci-o, "to see"] *An appearance*; *a semblance, show, look*.

spĕcŭlātōr-ius, ia, ium, adj. [spĕcŭlātor, "a spy *or* scout"] *Pertaining to a spy* or *scout*: speculatorium navigium, *a spy-boat, vessel of observation*.

spē-s, ĕi (Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. only in post classical writers), f. [for spēr-s, fr. sper-o; as seen by *spēr-es*, an

old Acc. Plur. in one of the earliest Roman writers] *Hope, expectation.*

stăbĭl-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [stabilis "steady"] *Steadiness, firmness.*

stă-tim, adv. [st(a)-o] ("By a standing"; hence) *Immediately, at once.*

stă-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [st(a)-o, "to stand"] ("A standing"; hence) Of soldiers: *A post, outpost, station.*

stătŭo, stătŭi, stătūtum, stătŭĕre, 3. v. a. [stătus, uncontr. gen. stătū-is, "a standing position"] *To decide, resolve, fix, determine.*

strĕp-ĭtus, ītūs, m. [strĕp-o, "to make a noise"] *A noise.*

stŭd-ĕo, ŭi, no sup. ēre, 2. v. n. ["To be in haste" to do, *etc.*, a thing; hence) *To be eager* or *very desirous* [akin to σπουδ-ή, "haste"].

stŭd-ĭum, ĭi, n. [stŭd-ĕo] *Eagerness, eager desire.*

sŭa, sŭi; see sŭus.

sub, prep. gov. abl. *Under* [ὑπ-ό].

sub-dŭco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [sŭb, "from below"; dūco, "to draw"] Of the vessels of the ancients: *To draw ashore, haul on land.*

sŭbĭt-o, adv. [sŭbĭt-us] *Suddenly, on a sudden.*

sŭbĭ-tus, ta, tum, adj. [sŭbeo, "to come on,"] *Sudden, unexpected. Hasty.*

sublĭca, ae, N. f. *A stake, pile.*

sub-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for sub-jăcĭo; fr. sub, "under"; jăcĭo, "to throw"] *To throw, place,* or *bring under* or *beneath. To expose* to peril.

sub-ministro, ministravi, ministratum, ministrare, 1. v. a [sub, "without force"; ministro, "to supply"] *To supply, furnish.*

sub-mitto, misi, missum, mittere, 3. v. a. [sŭb, "without force"; mitto, "to send"] *To send, dispatch.*

sub-sĕquor, secūtus sum, sequi, 3. v. dep. [sub, "close after"; sequor, "to follow"] *To follow close after* or *in close pursuit.*

sub-sĭd-ĭum, ĭi, n. [for sub-sed-ĭum; fr. sub, "behind"; sed-eo, "to sit"] *Aid, assistance, succour.*

sub-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [sŭb, "beside, near"; sum, "to be"] *To be beside* or *near; to be at hand.*

suc-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [for sub-cēdo; fr. sŭb, "behind"; cēdo, "to go or come"] *To go* or *come, after,* or *in the place of; to succeed.*

suc-cīdo, cīdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for sub-caedo; fr. sub, "without force"; caedo, "to cut down"] With accessory notion of damage: *To cut down, ravage, destroy.*

suf-fŏdĭo, fōdi, fossum, fodere, 3. v. a. [for sub-fŏdĭo; fr. sŭb, "beneath"; fŏdĭo; "to dig"; hence "to stab"] Of horses as objects: *To stab in the belly.*

sŭi, sibi, se, pron. pers. sing. *and* plur. *Of* etc., *himself; herself, itself, themselves.*

sum, fŭi, esse. v. n.: *To be.* With Gen.: *To be the property of; to belong to* [in pres. tenses akin to ἐσ-μί=εἰ-μί, and to Sans. root AS, "to exist, to be"; in Perf. tenses akin to φύ-ω, φῦ-μι, and Sans. root BHU, "to be"].

summ-a, ae, f. [summ-us, "highest"] *The whole* of anything, as opp. to a part: summa imperii, *the chief* or *sole command.*

sum-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [for sub-mŏveo; fr. sŭb, "from beneath"; mŏveo, "to move"] *To drive off* or *away.*

summus, a. um; see sŭperus.

sū-mo, mpsi, mptum, mere, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. sŭb-emo; fr. sŭb. "up"; emo, "to take"] Of labour, *etc.*: *To employ, spend, undertake.*

sŭpĕrior, us: see sŭperus.

sŭ-pĕr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *and* a. [sŭper, "above"] Neut.: a. *To rise,* or *be, above. To prove superior; to surpass, excel.* Act.: *To rise above,* or *higher than,* something. *To overcome, subdue, vanquish. To outdo* a person; *to overmatch.*

sŭper-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [sŭper, "over and above"; sum, "to be"] *To remain; to be left.*

sŭpĕr-us, a. um, adj. [sŭpĕr, "above"] Comp.: **sŭpĕrior**, us: Of locality: *Higher, upper.* Of time: *Former, preceding.* Sup.: **summus**, a, um: Of locality: *Highest. The highest part of* that denoted by the substantive to which it is in attribution. Of degree, *etc.*, *Highest, utmost, very great. Most important.*)

supplĭcā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [supplic(a)-o, "to supplicate"] ("A supplicating"; hence) *A day (set apart) for prayer* whether by way of thanksgiving or humiliation.

supplĭc-ĭum, ĭi, n. [supplĭc-o, "to kneel down"] ("A kneeling down" for the purpose of punishment; hence) *Punishment.*

sup-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [for sub-porto; fr. sub, "up to"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry, convey,* or *bring up to.*

sŭprā, **adv.** [contracted fr. original form sŭpĕrā, adverbial Abl. of sŭpĕrus] Of time: *Before, above, previously.*

sus-cĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for subs-căpio; fr. subs (=sub), "from beneath"; căpio, "to take"] *To take upon oneself, to undertake, enter upon, begin.*

suspīc-ĭo, ōnis, f. [suspĭc-or] *Mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭc-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [suspĭc-io, "to look at secretly"; hence, "to mistrust"—in which sense it is found, perhaps, only in participles] *To mistrust, suspect.*

sus-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for subs-tĕnĕo, fr. subs (=sub), "upwards, up"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To support, sustain, maintain. To bear up against, withstand. To check, restrain.*

sŭ-us, a, um, possess. pron. [sŭ-i] *Of, or belonging to, himself (herself, etc.); his, etc., own.*—As Subst.: **sŭi**, ōrum, m. plur. *Their countrymen.*

T.

tam, adv. [prob. akin to talis, "such"] With adj.: *So, so very.*

tămen, adv. [perhaps a lengthened form of tam, "so"] ("In so far"; hence) *Nevertheless, notwithstanding, yet still.*

tan-dem, adv. [for tam-dem: fr. tam, "so"; demonstrative suffix dem] *At length, at last.*

tantŭ-lus, la, lum, adj. dim. [for tantŏ-lus; fr. tantus, uncontr. gen. tant(o)-i, "so little"] *So little* or *small*; *so unimportant or trivial.*

tantum-mŏdo, adv. [tantum, "only"; strengthened by mŏdo, "only"] *Only, merely,* etc.

tant-us, a, um, adj. *So much, so great*: at ch. 8, in neut. with Gen. of thing measured. *So great.*

tard-e, adv. [tard-us, "slow"] *Slowly.* Comp.: tard-ius.

tēlum, i. n. *A weapon,* whether for hurling or for close quarters; *a javelin.*

tĕmĕr-e, adv. [obsol. temer-us, "by chance"] hence, with neque (=et non) *And not easily.*

tĕm-o, ōnis, m. *The pole* of a carriage.

tempes-tas, tātis, f. [for temper-tas; fr. tempus, old gen. temper-is, as proved by existing adverbial abl. tempĕr-i] Of weather; in a bad sense: *Storm, tempest.*

tem-pus, poris, n. *Time* in general [root TEM, akin to τέμνω, "to cut"].

tĕn-ĕo, ŭi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To hold; to have in one's possession. To hold* or *keep back.* With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To keep one's self,* etc., *back,* i.e. *to remain.* Of a place: *To occupy.*

ten-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [tĕn-ĕo, "to hold"] *To try, make trial of, put to the test. To attempt.*

tĕnŭ-ĭter, adv. [tĕnŭ-is, "thin"] (After the manner of the *tĕnŭis*"; hence) *Thinly.*

tergum, i, n. *The back,* whether of man or beast: terga vertĕre, *to turn the backs,* i.e. *to take to flight, to flee.*

ter-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [tres, t(e)r-ium, "three"] *Three each.*

ter-ra, rae, f. *The earth,* as such. *The earth, soil, ground* [prob. akin to Gr. τέρ-σομαι, "to be, *or* become dry"].

terr-or, ōris, m. [terr-ĕo, "to frighten"] *Affright, alarm, terror.*

ter-tius, tia, tium, adj. [tres; see terni] *The third.*

tignum, ni, n. *A beam, pile.*

tĭm-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. a. *To be afraid of; to fear.*

tĭmĭd-e, adv. [tĭmĭd-us]. *In a timid way, timidly*: non timide, *not timidly*; i.e. *boldly, daringly.*

tĭm-ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [tĭm-ĕo] *Fearful, afraid, timid.* Comp. tĭmĭd-ior; (Sup.: timid-issimus).

tĭm-or, ōris, m. [tĭm-ĕo] *Fear, dread, terror.*

tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, tollĕre [root TOL, whence tŭli; see fĕro] Of a shout: *To raise.*

tor-mentum, menti, n. [for torqumentum; fr. torqu-ĕo, "to hurl"] *A* military *engine* for hurling missles.

tot, num, adj. indecl. *So many.*

tōtus, a, um, adj.: *All, all the, the whole, the whole of* (denoting a thing in its entirety). In adverbial force: *Wholly, altogether.*

trab-s, is, f. *A beam, a timber* [akin to τράπ-ηξ].

trā-do, didi, ditum, dĕre. 3. v. a. [tra (= trans), "across"; do, "to give"] *To give,* or *yield up, to surrender.*

tranquill-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [tranquill-us, "calm"] Of wind, sea: *Stillness, calmness.*

tran-scendo, scendi, scensum, scendĕre, 3. v. a. [for trans-scando; fr. trans, "across"; scando, "to climb"] *To climb across* or *over*; *to pass,* or *get, over.*

trans-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre,

3. v. a. [trans, "across"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead across.*

trans-ĕo, ivi *or* ii, itum, ire, v. a. irreg. [trans, "across"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go across* a thing; *to cross*, or *pass, over.*

transjec-tus, tūs, m. [for transjac-tus; fr. trans, "beyond"; jacio, "to throw"] *A crossing* or *passing over, passage.*

trans-porto, portāvi port-ātum, port-āre, 1. v. a. [trans, "across"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry, or convey, across* or *over; tr transport.*

trans-trum, tri, n. [trans, "across"] *A cross-bench* in a vessel.

trĕ-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for tri-cent-i; fr. tres, t(e)r-ium, "three"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Three hundred.*

tres, tria (Gen. trium), num. adj. *Three* [τρεῖς, τρία].

trib-ūnus, ūni, m. [trib-us, "a tribe"] *A tribune.*

tri-d-ŭum, ŭi, n. [for tri-di-vum; fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; di-es, "a day"] *A space of three days; three days.*

tri-enn-ium, ii, n. [for tri-ann-ium fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; ann-... year"] *A space of three yea... years.*

tri-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Thr... tens"; hence) *Thirty* [tres, tri-um; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

tri-plex, plicis, adj. [for tri-plic-s; fr. trēs, tri-um, "three"; plico, "to fold"] *Three-fold, triple.*

truncus, i. m. *The trunk*, or *stem, of a tree.*

tŭ-ĕor, itus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. With accessory notion of care or protection; *To protect, defend.*

tum, adv. *At that time; then* [prob. akin to a demonstr. root TO; Gr, τό].

turma, ae, f. *A troop*, or *squadron, of horse.*

turpis, e, adj. *Shameful, base, disgraceful.* Comp.: turpior.

turris, is, f. *A tower* [τύῤῥις].

tūt-e, adv. [tūt-us] *Safely, in safety.* Comp.: tūt-ius.

tūt-o, adv. [tūt-us] *Safely, securely, in safety.*

tū-tus, ta, tum, adj. [tū-ĕor, "to see to"] *Safe, secure; free from*, or *out of, danger.*

U

ŭ-bi, adv. [akin to qui] *In which place, where.*

ŭbi-que, adv. [ubi] *Everywhere, in every direction.*

ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, 3. v. dep. *To punish, take vengeance on.*

ul-lus, la, lum, adj. [for un-lus; fr. un-us, "one"; *Any one, any.*

ulter-ĭor, ius, comp. adj. [obsol. ulter, "beyond"] *Further.*

ultĭmus, a um, sup. adj. *Furthest; most distant* or *remote.* Comp.: ulterior.

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj. *Furthest; most distant* or *remote.*

ultr-o, adv. [obsol. ulter, ultr-i, "beyond"] *On his, etc., part; of one's own accord, without being requested.*

ūn-ā, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of ūn-us, "one"] *In company, together.*

u-nde, adv. [for cu-nde = qu-nde), fr. qu-i] *From which place, whence.*

un-dĕcim, num. adj. indecl. [for un-décem; fr. un-us, "one"; decem, "ten"] *Eleven.*

und-ĭ-que, adv. [und-e; (i) connecting vowel; que, indefinite suffix] *From ...arts or every quarter; on all sides.*

...versus, versa, versum adj. [un-...ersus, "turned"] *All together, ...e.*

...uam, adv. [un-us] *At any (one) ...me; ever.*

ūn-us, a, um, (Gen. ūnius; Dat. ūni), adj.: *One. Alone, only* [εἷς, ἑν-ός].

u-s-que, adv. [akin to qui; with (s) epenthetic; quĕ, indefinite suffix] *Even:* usque ad, *even up to* or *till.*

ū-sus, sūs, m. [for ut-sus, fr. ūt-or] *Use, employment. Service, advantage, benefit. Practice, exercise. Experience.*

ut, (originally **ūti**) adv. *and* conj. [prob. akin to qui Adv.: *As. Inasmuch as, because, for.* Con.: *That*=to with English Inf. *So that. To the end that, in order that. Although.*

ŭter-que, utrā-que, utrumque (Gen. utrius-que; Dat. utrique), pron. adj. [uter "which" of two; "one or the other"; que, "and"] *Both one and the other; both, each.*

ūti; see ut.

ūtor, ūsus sum, ūti, 3. v. dep. With Abl. *To use, ma... use of To have, enjoy.*

ūt-ilis, ile, adj. [ut-or, "to use"] *Useful, serviceable, profitable, advantageous* sometimes with Dat. Comp.: ūtil-ior.

ūtil-ĭtas, itātis, f. [util-is] *Usefulness, serviceableness, benefit, profit, advantage.*

ūtor, ūsus sum, ūti, 3. v. dep. With Abl. *To use, make use of, employ.*

utr-im-que, adv. [uterque utr-(ius)-que; with adverbial suffix im inserted between que and the theme of the first portion of this compound word] *On both sides.*

uxor, ōris, f. *A wife, spouse.*

V.

văc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *To be empty, void,* or *vacant*; *to be unoccupied.*

vac-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. [văc-o, "to be empty"] *Empty, deserted*, etc.

vădum, i, n. [văd-o, "to go"] *A shallow, shoal.*

văg-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [vag-us, "wandering"] *To wander, roam at large*, etc.

văl-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To be strong* or *powerful.*

vallis, is, f. *A valley.*

vall-um, i, n. [akin to vall-us, "a stake, palisade,"] *An earthen wall*, or *rampart*, set with stakes, palisades, *a palisaded mound.*

vast-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vast-us] *To lay waste, ravage.*

vast-us, a, um, adj. *Vast.*

vectīgāl-is, e, adj. [vectīgal, "tribute"] *Of* or *belonging to, tribute*; *under tribute, tributary.*

vĕhĕmen-ter, adv. [for vehement-ter; fr. vehemens, vehement-is, "violent"] *Violently.*

vel, conj. [akin to vol-o, velle, "to wish"] *Or if you will, or.*

vē-lum, li, n. [perhaps for veh-lum; fr. veh-o, "to carry"] ("The carrying thing"; hence) *A sail.*

vēnā-tio, tiōnis, f. [vēn(a)-or, "to hunt"] *Hunting, the chase.*

ven-do, didi, ditum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [vēn-um, "sale"; do, "to place"] *To sell, vend.*

vĕnio, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. n. *To come.* Impers. Pass.: ventum erat, *it had been come* (by them); i.e., *they had come.*

vent-ĭto, ĭtāvi, ĭtātum, ĭtāre, 1. v. n. intens. [vent-o, "to come often"] *To come very often, to keep coming.*

vent-us, i, m *Wind* [akin to Sans. VA, "to blow"].

vĕr-ĕor, ĭtus sum, ēri 2. v. dep. *To fear, dread, be afraid of.*

verg-o (perf. acc. to some versi), no sup., ĕre, 3. v. n. *To bend, turn, incline itself*; i.e. of places, *to lie* or *be situate* in any direction.

vēri-sĭmĭlis, simile, adj. [or, more correctly, two words; veri similis; fr. vēri, gen. of vērum, "truth"; similis, "like"] *Like the truth,*; *probable.*

vēr-o, adv. [vēr-us, "true"] ("In truth"; hence) *But in fact, but in deed, however.*

vert-o, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. *To turn.*

vēr-us, a. um, adj. *True.*

vestig-ĭum, ii, n. [vestig-o, "to track"] ("A tracking"—"that which is tracked"; hence) *A footprint*: eōdem vestigio rĕmănēre, (*to remain in the same footprint*; i.e.) *to remain in the same spot without moving the feet*: ch. 2. Of time: *Point, moment, instant.* Adverbial expression: ē vestigio, *Instantly, forthwith.*

vest-ĭo, ivi *or* ii, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [vest-is, "a garment, clothing"] *To clothe.* Pass.: **vest-ĭor**, ītus sum, īri.

1. **vesti-tus**, tūs, m. [vesti-o, "to clothe"] ("A clothing"; hence) *Clothing, clothes, dress.*

2. **vestitus**, a, um, P. perf. pass. of vestio.

vĕt-us, ĕris, adj. ("That has existed, *etc.*, for years"; hence) *Old, ancient*, etc. [akin to ἔτ-ος, "a year," with digamma prefixed].

vexo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. intens. [=veh-so; fr. veh-o] ("To carry much *or* frequently"; hence, of the result of carrying; "to move violently"; hence) *To harass, ravage, lay waste*, etc.

via (old form vē-a), ae. f. [for ve-ha; fr. vē-ho, "to carry"] *A way, road*, etc.

viāt-or, tōris, m. [vi(a)-o, "to travel"] *A traveller.*

victōr-ĭa, iae, f. [victor, "a conqueror"] *Victory.*

vic-us, i, m. *A village* [akin to οἶκ-ος, "a house," with digamma prefixed].

vĭdeo, vidi, visum, vidēre, 2. v. a. Act. *To see.* Pass.: *To be seen. To seem appear* [akin to root VID, "to see"].

vigil-ia, iae, f. [vigil-o, "to watch"] *A watch* by night.

vi-ginti, num. adj. indecl. *Twenty* [for bi-ginti; fr. bi (=bis), "twice"; ginti=κοντα="ten"].

vinco, vici, victum, vincĕre, 3. v. a. [root VIC] *To conquer, overcome subdue*, etc. Pass.: **vincor**, victus sum, vinci.

vinc-ŭlum, ŭli, n. [vinc-io, "to bind"] *A chain, fetter.* Plur.: *Chains, fetters*, i.e. (sometimes) *prison.*

vindico, **āvi**, **ātum**, āre, 1. v. a. *To avenge a wrong; to inflict punishment, or take vengeance, on* a person. Impers. Pass.: Vindicandum (esse), *that punishment should be inflicted* or *vengeance taken.*

vīnĕ-a, ae, f. [vīnĕ-us, "pertaining to the vine"] Milit. t. t.: *A vinea*; a kind of pent-house, mantlet, or shed (built like an arbour), used in sieges by the assailing party to defend themselves against the missiles and the fire hurled from the walls. Its usual length was sixteen feet, and its height eight feet. The sides were formed of wicker work, while the roof was composed of wicker work or planks covered with raw hides, wet cloths, earth, etc., in order to prevent the fire hurled by the enemy from destroying it. Under cover of these *vineas* the besiegers carried on their military operations; either undermining the walls, or making a breach in them by the use of the *aries* or battering-ram.

vĭr, viri, m. *A man* [akin to Gr. ἥρ-ως; Sans. *vir-a*, "a hero"].

vīres; see vis.

virgul-tum, ti, n. [virgŭl-a, "a twig"] *Underwood, copse-wood.*

vir-tus, tūtis, f. [vir, "a man"] *Courage, bravery, valour.*

vis, vis (plur. **vires**, ium), f. *Strength, might. Power. Force, violence* [akin to Gr. ϝίς].

vī-ta, tae, f. [for viv-ta; fr. viv-o, "to live"] *Life.*

vīvo, vixi, victum, vīvĕre, 3. v. n. *To live* [root VI, "to live"; cp. βιός, βιόω].

vix, adv. *With difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

vŏlo, vŏlŭi, no sup., velle, v. a. irreg. *To have a wish* or *desire for*; *to wish, desire* [akin to βόλ-ομαι=βούλ-ομαι, "to wish"].

vŏlun-tas, tātis, n. f. [volo, "to will"] *Will, inclination.*

vox, vōcis, f. [for voc-s; fr. vŏc-o, "to call"] *The voice. A word.* Plu.: *Talk, conversation.*

vulgus, i, m. *and* n. *The multitude* or *mass*; *the common people, mob, populace* [prob. akin to Fόχλος, "a crowd"].

vulnĕr-o, avi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vulnus, vulnĕr-is, "a wound"] *To wound.*

vuln-us, ŏris, n. *A wound.*

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. III.

NOTE.—The student is supposed to read carefully the chapter on which each of the following exercises is based and to note carefully every construction before attempting to translate the sentences into Latin.

I.

1. Servius Galba was sent by Caesar against the Veragri. 2. He set out with one legion against the Allobroges whose territories extend from the lake of Geneva to the top of the Alps. 3. Caesar wished to open a road over the Alps. 4. He knew that merchants often at great risk were wont to go to those places. 5. Ambassadors were sent from all sides to Galba and peace was made. 6. What was the name of the village in which Galba passed the winter? 7. This village was hemmed in by very high mountains. 8. A river divided the town into two parts; one of which was assigned to the Roman legion. 9. This place was fortified by Galba, the lieutenant. 10. He took several forts by storm and stationed there a garrison.

II.

1. Caesar ordered the soldiers to collect corn to that place. 2. He was informed that the Gauls had seized the mountains. 3. The mountains which overhung are held by the Seduni and Veragri. 4. The Gauls, to whom he had assigned one part of the village had left during the night. 5. It happened that they suddenly renewed the war and tried to crush the Roman legion. 6. The legion was not complete because two cohorts had been withdrawn (from it). 7. These cohorts had been sent for the purpose of obtaining supplies. 8. The soldiers of these two cohorts, on account of the unevenness of the ground, did not think that they were able to withstand the attack of the Veragri. 9. When we made an onset against them, they were unable to withstand our troops. 10. The Veragri were persuaded that the Romans were attempting to seize the places for the purpose of holding them.

III.

1. The work on the winter quarters had not been fully finished by Galba. 2. Sufficient provision for supplies had not been made by our men. 3. The enemy made a surrender and gave us hostages. 4. It is impossible that aid should come to us in this war. 5. This war happened contrary to his expectation. 6. The heights were manned by the forces of the enemy. 7. Supplies cannot be brought up because the roads are blocked up. 8. Let us make a sortie and hasten to a place of safety by the same roads by

which we came. 9. A majority determined to abandon the baggage and hasten to a place of safety. 10. After making a sortie, we defended our camp.

IV.

1. There was hardly time for giving a signal. 2. From every side the enemy hurled darts against our men. 3. Our men at first from their higher position hurled no weapon without effect. 4. When the enemy were wearied with long fighting, they withdrew and fresh men took their places. 5. Our men were so few that they could not withdraw from the fight, even when they were tired. 6. When one part of the camp was hard pressed by our men, to that quarter the enemy sent aid. 7. No chance is given to them of doing any of these things. 8. They cannot leave the place where they stand even when wounded.

V.

1. The enemy fought for more than six hours. 2. Not only did the enemy press them more vigorously, but they began to fill up the trenches. 3. In the battle with the Nervii, Servius was exhausted with many wounds. 4. We said that Caesar was a man of great valour. 5. The only hope of safety lies in making a sortie. 6. Call together the officers and order them to stop the fight. 7. We picked up the spent weapons. 8. Refresh yourselves for your toil and then make a sortie from the camp. 9. All your hope of safety rests in your own valour.

VI.

1. The enemy suddenly made a sortie from every quarter against our men. 2. You leave us no opportunity either of finding out what is doing or of collecting our wits. 3. Do you entertain the hope of slaying your enemies? 4. Out of more than one thousand men nearly one hundred were slain. 5. It was well known that more than a third of the enemy were slain in this battle. 6. Galba had come with one purpose but saw that he had met with a different state of things. 7. After this battle was fought, there was a great lack of arms and supplies among the enemy. 8. After setting fire to all the dwellings of the enemy, Galba led his army into winter quarters.

VII.

1. When Caesar had conquered the Belgae, he set out for Italy. 2. At the beginning of winter, a war suddenly broke out amongst the Gauls. 3. He desired to go to all these places and to ascertain what the cause of the war was. 4. Crassus with one legion was in a district very close to the ocean. 5. There was a great scarcity of corn in that district. 6. Caesar sent to the different states lieutenants for the purpose of obtaining corn. 7. After he had sent tribunes of the soldiers, he went into winter quarters. 8. He despatched one legion into the country of the Veneti.

VIII.

1. The influence of the Veneti is very great because they hold all the sea coast. 2. The Veneti often cross into Britain in ships. 3. They surpassed all the other tribes of Gaul in their knowledge of naval affairs. 4. Caesar says that almost all who were accustomed to use ships were subject to the Veneti. 5. By returning two Romans, the enemy thought that the hostages which had been given to Crassus would be received. 6. We had rather receive our hostages than remain in slavery to the Romans. 7. They agreed amongst themselves to urge the states of Gaul to act in a body. 8. We would enjoy the liberty which our forefathers have given to us rather then endure the slavery imposed by the Romans. 9. If you wish to receive your ambassadors, send back our hostages to us.

IX.

1. Meanwhile ships were constructed, rowers organized and sailors collected in Gaul. 2. Crassus informed Caesar of all these matters. 3. As soon as he could, he set out into the country of the Veneti and began to collect rowers for that war. 4. We knew how great a crime we have been guilty of. 5. They apprehended and threw into chains ambassadors, men who are always looked upon as sacred. 6. Considering the magnitude of the danger let us build as many ships as possible and let us provide all that is necessary for the war. 7. They had great confidence in their ships because they were aware that our soldiers had no knowledge of the locality where they would carry on the war. 8. They were particularly strong in ships, still everything turned out contrary to expectation. 9. Navigation is a very different thing in the river Loire from what it is on the broad ocean. 10. They formed their plans when it was generally known where Caesar would carry on the war.

X.

1. The difficulty of carrying on the war was very great, nevertheless Caesar was led to undertake it from the league of so many states. 2. The wrong done to the Romans aroused the soldiers to renew the war. 3. If we overlook this revolt, the Morini may do the same thing. 4. They renewed the war against the Romans after the hostages had been given. 5. Since all the Gauls are quickly excited to war, the army must be distributed among several communities. 7. Caesar thought that the Gauls should be aroused to war and that his army ought to be distributed among the states of Gaul. 8. Almost all the Gauls are fond of a change in government and are easily excited to war. 9. Before the states formed a league, the army must be sent among them.

XI.

1. The lieutenant was sent into the country of the Treviri with six legions. 2. He charged the lieutenant to keep the Belgae in allegiance. 3. The Germans had been summoned to the aid of the Belgae. 4. They attempted to cross the river by means of boats. 5. Crassus with many auxiliary troops set out for that region. 6. Sabinus took care that such powerful nations

should be kept apart. 7. The Romans appoint Decimus Brutus commander over all their vessels. 8. The general himself, as soon as he was able, set out against the enemy. 9. Caesar himself hastened to the sea coast with all the infantry. 10. Auxiliary troops assembled from all the neighbouring districts

XII.

1. The towns were situated on high promontories or on tongues of land. 2. There is no access to the towns either on foot or by ships. 3. The tide in that place comes up every twelve hours. 4. At ebb-tide he saw that the ships were wrecked on the shoals. 5. Caesar shut out the sea by means of dykes and dams, which he made level with the walls of the town. 6. The enemy moved their goods the more easily, because they had an abundance of ships. 7. During the greater part of the summer Caesar was detained by storms. 8. The ports were few, so that there was a great difficulty in bringing their vessels to land. 9. The places situated on the sea were protected by the advantages of their position.

XIII.

1. The ships are made flat bottomed, that they may the more easily encounter the shoals. 2. The prows of all the ships were made perpendicular, to withstand the violence of the waves. 3. The ships, which were made wholly of oak, could withstand any violence, however great. 4. The Veneti used timbers a foot thick, spikes of iron of the thickness of one's thumb, iron cables instead of ropes, and hides for sails. 5. The enemy did not use canvas on account of its scarcity, and because they were not able to steer their ships with sails of such a kind. 6. Our ships could neither bear a storm easily nor stay in shallow water with safety. 7. The ships of the enemy were better suited to withstand the force of the storms. 8. No dart thrown by our men could easily reach the ships of the enemy, on account of their height. 9. When they ran before the wind, the enemy had no fear of the rocks. 10. When the ships of our men were left by the tide, they greatly dreaded all kinds of mishaps.

XIV.

1. So much labour was spent in vain that we could not check the enemy's flight, nor injure them. 2. When Caesar learned that several towns were taken, he awaited the arrival of the fleet. 3. As soon as the Roman fleet was seen by the enemy, they set out from their port with all their ships completely equipped. 4. Brutus said that he did not know what the enemy would do in the battle. 5. "What mode of battle," said he, "will they adopt in such an emergency?" 6. Their ships cannot be injured by the beaks of our ships, because they are made of oak. 7. When the sails and rigging were torn away, their ships were of no use to them. 8. Our men were greatly superior to the enemy, because the battle was fought in sight of the Roman commander. 9. Our troops occupied all the hills, from which the battle could be seen.

XV.

1. Three or four ships at a time surrounded each of the enemy's vessels. 2. Our men at this time strove to board the ships of the enemy. 3. After the barbarians observed our men boarding the ships of the enemy, the latter sought safety by flight. 4. Since they found no relief for this, they turned their ships about. 5. They were not able to stir, on account of the calm. 6. The sudden calm was extremely opportune for pursuing them singly. 7. Very few of the ships of the enemy reached the land in safety. 8. The battle against the Veneti las ed from about 10 a. m. to sunset. 9. On that day the Roman soldiers fought bravely, for Caesar was witnessing the battel on the neighbouring heights.

XVI.

1. The Romans brought the war to a close by this battle. 2. Whatever ships we have any where, have been collected in this place. 3. We have no place to retreat to, nor can we defend our towns. 4. The enemy surrendered their towns on that day to our commander. 5. They must be punished, that they may in future regard the rights of ambassadors. 6. When the enemy were conquered, Caesar put all the senators to death. 7. The inhabitants of that state he sold as slaves. 8. In this battle the Veneti lost very many ships. 9. The barbarians carefully observed for the future the rights of ambassadors.

XVII.

1. While the lieutenant was receiving large forces from Caesar, Viridovix was collecting his troops. 2. Viridovix collected large forces from the states which had revolted. 3. Within a few days past, the enemy's gates had been closed to the Romans. 4. Hope of plunder had called out a large number of robbers from all parts of Gaul. 5. They had been allured from agricultural pursuits and their ordinary business by their desire for plunder. 6. Every day Viridovix offered Sabinus a chance to fight. 7. In consequence of the absence of Caesar, Sabinus was unwilling to fight except on even terms. 8. A lieutenant ought not to fight unless some favourable chance is offered. 9. The enemy dared to go even to the rampart of the camp. 10. At the distance of ten miles the enemy took up their position on a hill.

XVIII.

1. Sabinus persuaded a certain man who was very shrewd to go over to the enemy as a deserter. 2. Caesar instructed this man what he wished to be done. 3. This man, a Gaul, told them that Sabinus on the next night would lead his army out of camp. 4. This man told the enemy in what straights the Romans were. 5. The opportunity of leading the army out of camp ought not to be thrown away. 6. Men generally are glad to believe what they wish. 7. They did not go to the camp till they had collected faggots to fill up the trench. 8. All shouted out: "We must not lose the chance of conquering the enemy." 9. With joy they set out to the camp after collecting twigs with which they intended tc fill up the trench. 10. On that day, he set out for the purpose of bringing aid to Caesar.

XIX.

1. They hastened with great speed, in order that the Romans might not rally and arm themselves. 2. The spot where the camp was situated, gradually sloped to the plain. 3. With such speed they hastened that they arrived at that place breathless. 4. Very little time was given our men for arming themselves. 5. When they got to the camp all out of breath, Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired. 6. It happened that our men made a sortie from two gates. 7. On account of the valour of the soldiers, not even one of the enemy escaped. 8. As the Gauls undertake war with eagerness, so they are by no means resolute in bearing defeat.

XX.

1. Almost at the same time P. Crassus was waging war in these places where the army of Valerius had been defeated a few years before. 2. Caesar said that Aquitania forms the third part of Gaul. 3. Mallius fled from the same place after losing his baggage train. 4. No moderate activity must be employed. 5. When he had arrived there and learned that it was the place where Valerius had been killed a few years before he used no ordinary diligence. 6. On his arrival, the Sotiates collected all the forces they could and attacked our army on the march. 7. When the cavalry of the enemy were repulsed, the commander led the infantry against the enemy. 8. The enemy renewed the battle when they saw that our forces were scattered. 9. He collected all the force and engaged in battle on that day with the enemy.

XXI.

1. Since the safety of all Aquitania depends on our valour, let us not turn our backs. 2 What can they do with a mere boy for a leader. 3. They wish to show what they can do without their general. 4. Sometimes they made sorties, and sometimes they worked mines up to the walls. 5. A large number of the enemy spent with wounds began to retreat to their town. 6. The people of Aquitania are very well skilled in working mines. 7. Owing to the watchfulness of our men they could accomplish nothing with mines. 8. They asked Caesar to receive them and their citizens in surrender. 9. When this request was granted, all were ordered to hand over their arms to our officers.

XXII.

1. The king from one part of the town attempted to make a sally. 2. He set out with six hundred devoted followers, called soldurii. 3. They enjoy all the blessings of life in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves. 4. If any thing should happen to him to whose friendship a soldurius has devoted himself, he would not refuse to die. 5. Nor has any one been found so far who has refused to commit suicide. 6. They raised a shout and boldly rushed to arms. 7. Though they were driven back into the town, nevertheless, they enjoyed the same basis of surrender. 8. After a fierce battle, the king and his devoted followers were driven back into town. 9. The Romans drove the king into the town, where he surrendered all his possessions to Crassus.

XXIII.

1. The lieutenant received in surrender the hostages whom the enemy gave. 2 The town was taken a few days after they arrived there. 3. Ambassadors were summoned from these states which belonged to Hither Spain. 4. On the arrival of the auxiliaries they carried on the war more eagerly. 5. Crassus could not easily separate his forces, whereas the enemy could roam aboat and leave a sufficient garrison for the camp. [illegible]ce the number of the enemy was increasing day by day, he thought that he must not hesitate to engage in battle. 7. Learning that the whole council had the same feeling, he set the next day for the battle. 8. The leaders picked for that war had served for many years under Sertorius. 9. The enemy determined to keep our men from the provisions which were in these places.

XXIV.

1. At daybreak, Caesar drew up all his army in a double line. 2. All the auxiliaries of the enemy were placed in the middle of the line. 3. Let us wait to see what plans the enemy are forming. 4. On account of our reputation in war we shall easily obtain a victory. 5. The enemy attacked our men encumbered with baggage while on the march. 6. The enemy thought that if the roads could be blocked up, and thus our army prevented from obtaining supplies, they could easily gain a victory without any loss. 7. On account of the hesitation of the enemy, our men were more eager for the battle. 8. We must no longer delay going into the enemy's camp. 9. The more timid the enemy were the more eager did our soldiers become. 10. When Caesar had addressed his soldiers, he led all his forces against the camp of the enemy.

XXV.

1. Some of the Romans filled the ditch ; others drove the enemy from the rampart. 2. While some were supplying stones and weapons for the fighters, others were bringing sods for the mound. 3. The enemy fought steadily and hurled weapons with good effect from the rampart. 4. Crassus, the lieutenant of Caesar, had not much confidence in the auxiliary troops who were stationed in the centre. 5. None of the darts which were thrown by our men from the heights, fell without effect. 6. The enemy fought for many hours steadily against our troops. 7. The Romans arrived at the decuman gate and demolished the walls before the enemy could find out what was going on. 8. Word was brought back to Crassus that the cavalry of the Romans had ridden round the camp of the enemy. 9. The camp of the Romans was fortified with the greatest care by Caesar. 10. We had an easy access to the camp of the enemy.

XXVI.

1. Caesar, addressing his troops, told them what he wished them to do in this battle. 2. Three cohorts which had been left to guard the camp were led out. 3. They led the horsemen around by a longer route that they might not be seen by the enemy. 4. The eyes of all the soldiers in the army were fixed on the battle. 5. The Romans burst through the defences of the camp before it was clear what was being done. 6. No one



IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

6"

Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



2.8
2.5
3.2
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.0

could easily perceive what the enemy were doing. 7. It often happens that the hope of victory brings strength to the soldiers. 8. The enemy, when surrounded on all sides, strive to rush through the fortifications. 9. Caesar with all his cavalry pursued the enemy through an unobstructed district. 10. It is clear that out of fifty thousand men hardly a fourth part was left.

XXVII.—XXVIII.

1. Very many Aquitanians gave themselves up to Caesar, but some of the remotest tribes omitted to send hostages to him. 2. Summer had now almost gone, and winter was near at hand. 3. The only nations among the Gauls which had not been subdued were the Morini and Menapii. 4. Both these nations carried on war in a different manner from Caesar. 5. When these nations had been conquered in battle they collected all their effects in the extensive forests of their country. 6. When Caesar arrived at the forest to which they had betaken themselves, he began to fortify a camp. 7. Having made an attack against our men they were driven back again into the woods. 8. They followed the Romans too far and lost a great many of their men.

XXIX.

1. After felling the trees, Caesar piled up the timber for a rampart. 2. To prevent an attack being made against our men, Caesar piled up all the timber he had cut. 3. Within a few days he covered a long distance with incredible speed. 4. Storms so severe followed that Caesar had of necessity to give up the work. 5. The soldiers could not be kept under cover from the continued rains. 6. He devastated all the lands of the enemy. 7. When he had burned all their buildings, he led home his army. 8. He stationed his soldiers in winter quarters among the states which lately had revolted.

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. IV.

I.

1. During the succeeding year a great number of the Tenchtheri crossed the river Rhine. 2. They cross this river not far from the place where the river flows into the sea. 3. For several years the Suevi had harrassed the Tenchtheri, and had kept them from tilling their land. 4. The Suevi have a hundred cantons, from each of which a thousand armed men are lead out to war every year. 5. The rest of the nation stay at home and maintain those who are in arms. 6. During the next year, those who are in arms now will remain at home. 7. Thus the one class (*hi*) stay at home and subsist on milk and flesh, while the other class (*illi*) are under arms. 8. Since the boys are not trained to any duty, they do nothing against their will. 9. On account of their daily exercise, they become men of extraordinary power. 10. The hides with which they are clothed are so scant that a great part of the body is exposed.

II.

1. They sell to the merchants what they take in war, for they do not import any thing. 2. The Gauls take special delight in their horses, and often obtain them at extravagant prices; the Germans, on the other hand, (*autem*) often use small and ill-shaped ones. 3. Caesar says that the Germans by daily training, make their horses capable of undergoing the greatest fatigue. 4. They often train themselves to leap down from their horses and to fight on foot. 5. It is necessary to train their horses to remain in the same spot, so that they may be able to withdraw to them. 6. They think that nothing is a greater disgrace than to use housings. 7. However few they are, they dare to attack any number whatever of effeminate Gauls. 8. They think that wine should not be imported, because by it men become effeminate.

III.

1. It is supposed to be especial glory that the lands of their enemies should lie waste. 2. A large number of states could not withstand their power. 3. As German ideas go, that state is very large and flourishing. 4. The Ubii are the most civilized of all the states of that district. 5. They have been habituated to the customs of the Gauls because they border on the Rhine. 6. Merchants, too, often have intercourse with them. 7. The Suevi often attempted to drive them out of their territories. 8. They could not be driven out of their lands by the Suevi. 9. The Suevi made them tributaries and reduced them to a state of less importance. 10. They were rendered weaker by the Suevi.

IV.

1. The two nations were said to have withstood the power of the Suevi for several years. 2. The Menapii, alarmed at the approach of the Usipetes and Tenchtheri, stationed garrisons on this side of the Rhine. 3. These nations wandered about Germany for three years after they were expelled from their territories. 4. They were so terrified by the approach of this host that they left their lands which they possessed. 5. Having tried every resource they pretended to return to their own abodes. 6. They were unable to cross the Rhine on account of their want of vessels. 7. Before crossing the river they seized all the vessels of the Menapii. 8. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii, who dwelt on this side of the river, were informed of their arrival. 9. When they crossed the river and seized all the houses of the Menapii, they maintained themselves for the greater part of that winter.

V.

1. No confidence ought to be placed in the Gauls on account of their fickleness. 2. They often aim at a change of government and are unstable in forming plans. 3. Travellers are often compelled against their will to disclose to them what they have heard about everything. 4. From what district do you come and what news have you heard? 5. They often repent immediately of schemes they enter into. 6. They are such slaves to idle stories that often the merchants invent news. 7. They often compelled the merchants to tell them where they were going and what they intended to do. 8. The merchants generally gave them fictitious news.

VI.

1. Caesar set out to the Roman army sooner than he was accustomed to do in previous years. 2. The things he suspected would happen had happened. 3. Several states sent ambassadors to the Germans and invited them to set out against the Gauls. 4. Everything has been done which you requested. 5. The Germans were led on by the hope that they would defeat the Romans. 6. When Caesar came to the chiefs of the Gauls, he pretended that he had not heard what they were doing. 7. He quieted their feelings by his speech and resolved to cheer them. 8. He levied from the Gauls a large number of cavalry. 9. In that year he resolved to carry on war against the Germans.

VII.

1. He began to collect a supply of corn and to select cavalry for the war. 2. He set out against those places where he heard the Germans were. 3. When the ambassadors came to him, he was distant a long journey from their camp. 4. We neither refuse to fight, if we are provoked, nor are we the first to make war upon others. 5. We resist everybody that makes war upon us, and we ask for no quarter. 6. This custom has been handed down to us from our ancestors, not to refuse a battle, if we are provoked in war. 7. Let not the Romans allow us to be driven from the lands we possess 8. We yield to the immortal gods alone to whom not even the Suevi can be equal.

VIII.

1. Caesar thought it best to reply to their speech thus. 2. I can have no friendship with you, if you remain long in Gaul. 3. It is not right that men who cannot defend their own territories should settle down in the lands of others. 4. So great a number of people cannot seize lands without doing harm to others. 5. We shall allow you to settle, if you wish, in the lands of the Ubii. 6. In my camp there are ambassadors who complain of the wrongs done by the Suevi. 7. These ambassadors asked aid from Caesar. 8. He granted this request to those who were asking aid from him.

IX.—X.

1. We shall return to you and report what our countrymen decide. 2. We ask you not to advance near our camp. 3. "I," said Caesar, "am not able to grant you this request." 4. A large portion of the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. When they asked Caesar not to move his camp nearer he thought it was for the purpose of causing delay. 6. I know that Caesar will move his camp nearer if he wishes. 7. Barbarous natives inhabit the large islands made by the Rhine where it approaches the ocean. 8. There are some of these natives that subsist on fish and birds' eggs. 9. The river Rhine, in the days of Caesar, flowed into the ocean by many mouths.

XI.

1. The Roman general on that day was not distant more than ten miles from the camp of the enemy. 2. On the next day the ambassadors of the enemy returned to the camp of Caesar. 3. We earnestly entreat you not to advance further. 4. We beg you to send forward some horsemen to keep your men from fighting. 5. If the Ubii will give us security on oath, we will accept the terms that you propose. 6. Here they assembled on the next day in great numbers to learn about Caesar's demands. 7. Tell the prefects not to harrass the enemy. 8. Caesar meanwhile sent forward men to order the soldiers not to contend in battle. 9. On the next day the enemy assembled in as large bands as possible to withstand the attack of our army. 10. Caesar advanced not more than four miles to obtain water. 11. Do not harrass the army in battle, but stand your ground until they advance to your van.

XII.

1. Though the number of our cavalry was more than five thousand, the enemy made an attack on them. 2. Our men feared nothing because the enemy had not more than five thousand in their army. 3. The enemy made a quick attack on our men. 4. As soon as they had dismounted they stabbed our horses underneath. 5. They did not cease from fighting till they had killed sixty-five of our men. 6. Piso, who had rescued his brother from danger, was himself surrounded and slain. 7. Piso himself fought against the enemy as long as he could, but at length *(denique)* he fell pierced with wounds. 8. His brother, who observed that Piso had fallen from his horse, rushed to his aid, but was slain.

XIII.

1. We must not listen to the ambassadors of the enemy, nor must we receive conditions from those who treacherously carry on war. 2. It was the height of folly to wait till the enemy had formed their plans. 3. Men who have treacherously sued for peace, and then made war without provocation, ought not to be listened to. 4. Caesar knew how great was the fickleness of the Gauls, and he gave them no time to form their plans. 5. The next day in the morning they came to Caesar to clear themselves for having deceived him. 6. It is the height of foll to let go by a single day suitable for battles. 7. I am glad that Caesar retained those elders who had come to sue for peace. 8. All his forces were led out of the camp on that day. 9. He ordered all of the cavalry to follow closely the enemy, so that no time should be allowed them to form their plans.

XIV.

1. He drew up his army in a triple line and quickly completed a journey of eight miles. 2. The rapidity of our advance and the defection of their countrymen threw the enemy into great confusion. 3. Caesar will arrive at the camp before we can tell what is going on. 4. Whether is it better to lead our soldiers against the enemy or to seek safety in flight? 5. The fear of the enemy was shown by their noise and bustling. 6. A battle was fought in this place by the enemy who boldly on that day withstood our troops. 7. All the children and women who crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. 8. The cavalry was sent by Caesar to overtake the rest of the enemy who crossed the river. 9. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the women and children. 10. Among the waggons and baggage a fierce battle was fought by the enemy.

XV.

1. The Germans threw away their arms, abandoned their military standards and rushed out of camp. 2. When they reached the confluence of the Meuse and the Rhine, they gave up hope of further flight. 3. There a great number was slain by Caesar's soldiers who pursued them to the banks of the river. 4. Overcome with fear they cast themselves into the river and perished. 5. We were all safe to a man, only a very few being wounded. 6. Many of the Germans were killed in that battle; but some few escaped in safety to their own land. 7. When our men withdrew to the camp, nearly all were found to be unhurt. 8. Caesar retained some of the Germans in his camp who were unwilling to go home. 9. They said that they wished to remain rather in the Roman camp than to go back to their own land.

XVI.

1. For many reasons Caesar determined that the war should be finished. 2. He saw that the Germans were easily influenced to come into Gaul. 3. When you find out that we have both the ability and the courage to cross the Rhine, you will fear for your own possessions. 4. Some of the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. These had crossed over the Rhine into the territory of the enemy and had united

their forces with them. 6. Caesar sent envoys to ask them why they carried on war against him. 7. These who had crossed the Rhine, as I have mentioned above, were not in the battle. 8. We earnestly beg of you to send us aid unless you are prevented by public duties from doing so. 9. Caesar had such a reputation for valour in consequence of the defeat of the Germans that the army of the Roman people was safe from all attacks. 9. They promised that they would give a large number of ships for the army.

XVII.

1. To cross the river in boats is neither safe nor consistent with the dignity of the Roman people. 2. There was the greatest difficulty in crossing the river, because the Rhine, as I have mentioned, is very deep. 3. Therefore, a bridge must be built or else the army must not be taken over. 4. The piles sharpened a little at the lower end were driven in, not vertically, but sloping. 5. The greater the violence of the water, the more tightly are these logs held together. 6. If the barbarians send down trees or boards to knock down the bridge, these things cannot harm it. 7. Such was the strength of the material employed that the bridge resisted the strong current of the river. 8. The greater the force of the current, the more firmly did the materials resist it.

XVIII.

1. Within ten days Caesar built the bridge over the Rhine. 2. All the material was brought together within a few days. 3. The army was led over and a guard was posted at each end of the bridge. 4. After building the bridge he sets out into the territory of the enemy. 5. Ambassadors came to him from several states to ask peace from him. 6. He ordered them to bring hostages to him within a few days. 7. From the time that he began to build the bridge the enemy prepared for flight. 8. They left their lands and hid themselves in the woods to which they carried all their goods. 9. When the enemy asked for peace he told them that he would give it if they would obey him.

XIX.

1. The enemy burned all the villages and houses, and cut down all their corn. 2. Caesar promised that he would aid them in battle. 3. After the Suevi had learned that Caesar was building a bridge, a council was held. 4. They sent envoys in all directions and ordered their people *(cives)* to assemble in one place. 5. They placed all their wives and children in the woods and all who were unable to bear arms. 6. Let all who can bear arms assemble in one place. 7. The place where they were ordered to assemble was about the centre of the country of the Suevi. 8. After Caesar had plundered the Sigambri and relieved the Ubii, he withdrew into Gaul. 9. He spent in all seventeen days on the other side of the Rhine. 10. After this the bridge which he had built was cut down.

XX.

1. A short period of time was left to carry on a regular war. 2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons furnished auxiliaries to our enemies.

3. It will be of great assistance to us if only we are able to ascertain what nation inhabits Britain. 4. If we cannot find out how great the island is, still, it will be of great advantage to examine the character of the people. 5. We know very little of the island, for very few persons except merchants go to it. 6. He thought if he should summon to himself the traders from all quarters, he might find out what harbours were suitable for war ships. 7. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants. 8. The time of the year was so short that it was impossible to carry on a regular campaign. 9. When he called the merchants to him, they could not tell the size of the island.

XXI.

1. Caius Volusenus, a tribune in his army, was sent forward with a war ship. 2. Before ordering the fleet to assemble, he directed Volusenus to explore the sea cost. 3. Before sending the ambassadors home again, he made them liberal promises. 4. All his plans were reported by merchants to the Britons. 5. Several states of Britain sent envoys to promise him that they would do all his orders. 6. Commius, whose influence among the Atrebates he regarded of great value, was ordered to go to them. 7. Visit what states you can and tell them that I shall shortly come. 8. I will examine all the places as far as opportunity offers, seeing that I dare not go ashore. 9. He returned and reported to Caesar all that he had seen.

XXII.

1. While ships were being got ready in that district for the purpose of carrying on a war against Britain, ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. The Morini who had made war on the Roman people excused themselves on the ground that they were barbarians. 3. We are unacquainted with your custom but we promise to do all that you order. 4. Caesar levied a large nnmber of hostages from the Morini, because he thought that an enemy who had given hostages would obey his commands. 5. About forty transports will be enough to convey our legions across the sea. 7. To these are to be added the eighteen transports which are detained by the wind from coming into the harbour. 7. What galleys we had besides, we shall leave on the coast of Gaul. 8. Many ships were prevented by the storm from reaching the island. 9. We ordered the lieutenant to send troops against the enemy.

XXIII.

1. These things were arranged by Caesar on that day. 2. At the third watch of the following night he went on board his vessel. 3. He waited at anchor till the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a suitable place for disembarking, when weapons can be thrown from the cliffs to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. After weighing anchor they advanced at a given signal about five miles from that place. 7. They obtained fair weather and moored the ships on an open beach. 8. He collected his officers and told them what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. In that spot they saw on all the hills the forces of the enemy.

XXIV.

1. The barbarians generally employed cavalry and charioteers in battle. 2. They followed our men with all their forces, after they learned of the arrival of the Romans. 3. It was not possible to moor ships of such size in that place. 4. The Romans could not moor their ships except in deep water. 5. The soldiers could not jump out of the ships, keep their footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy all at once. 6. The enemy, on the other hand, with all their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry ground. 7. Wholly unacquainted with this sort of fighting, our men were greatly terrified by the enemy. 8. The enemy boldly hurled their darts against our men, and spurred on their horses. 9. All those places were unknown to our troops who were oppressed with their heavy armour.

XXV.

1. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 2. The enemy were dislodged by arrows and heavy missiles hurled from the ships of war. 3. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 4. The figure of our ships, the motion of the oars and the unusual kind of engines terrified the barbarians. 5. He at least who carried the eagle of the tenth legion did his duty to the state and to the commander. 6. If you do not jump down out of your ship, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. Let no such disgrace be done; let us all leap down from the ships. 8. They leaped down from the ships and began to approach the enemy. 9. We pray the gods that this battle may turn out successfully for our legion.

XXVI.

1. The enemy fought fiercely for many hours. 2. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any we met. 3. The enemy would surround some as they come out of the ships in scattered groups. 4. The enemy knew all the shoals where our men landed. 5. Darts were thrown from the shore by the enemy. 6. When Caesar observed this he sent up some skiffs and spy boats filled with soldiers as a relief to those in distress. 7. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up because they had no cavalry. 8. A fierce attack was made on the enemy by our men. 9. When Caesar saw his soldiers in danger he sent his reserves to aid them. 10. When all the spy boats were filled with soldiers, the Romans soon reached the Island.

XXVII.

1. As soon as the Romans defeated the enemy in battle, the Britons gave hostages to Caesar. 2. When the Britons recovered from the flight they promised to do all that Caesar ordered. 3. Caesar sent forward Commius to Britain, but the Britons seized him after he disembarked. 4. They put him in chains although he had come to them in the character of an envoy. 5. After the battle was fought and peace made, he was sent back to Caesar. 6. The inhabitants asked the Romans to pardon their thoughtlessness. 7. Though you have made war on the Romans, I

am willing to pardon your thoughtlessness, if you give hostages. 8. Caesar levied hostages from all the states of the island. 9. Within a few days we shall give some hostages to you; others will be summoned from the more distant parts. 10. If you lay all the blame upon the multitude you cannot be pardoned by me.

XXVIII.

1. The eighteen ships did not reach the land till four days afterwards. 2. They were seen from the camp of the Romans, but some were carried down to the lower part of the island and others were driven back to the continent. 3. No ship was able to keep on its course owing to the great storm that arose. 4. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place from which they had started and some cast ashore. 5. On the lower part of the island very many of the vessels were wrecked with great loss to themselves. 6. They started for the continent with night before them, even though the storm was great. 7. When the ships started for the continent, many of them were filling with waves. 8. They set sail at day br ak and landed at sunset. 9. A great storm arose at sea when the ships were sailing to Britain.

XXIX.

1. It happened that Caesar did not know that the full moon caused very high tides in the ocean. 2. He had the galleys drawn up on shore and the transports anchored. 3. The Romans had no opportunity to lend aid to the ships. 4. On that night many ships were wrecked by the storm. 5. The rest of the ships lost their cables, anchors, and the rest of their rigging. 6. Throughout the whole army such a commotion took place that Caesar did not know what to do. 7. The Romans had no corn in the camp, for Caesar had not provided a supply since he intended to winter in Gaul. 8. All things necessary for building ships would have to be brought from the continent. 9. His ships were nearly all unseaworthy, and could not be repaired at this time.

XXX.

1. After this battle, the chiefs of Britain held conferences among themselves. 2. They learned that the Romans had few soldiers owing to the small size of our camp. 3. The camp of the Romans was very small because Caesar had no baggage in the army. 4. They thought that their best policy was to renew the war. 5. Since the Romans lack horsemen, ships and grain, the best thing to do is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return. 6. If our men were prevented from a return, the war would be prolonged to the winter. 7. They began again to form a conspiracy after they learned that our men had no cavalry. 8. No one will cross over to Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 9. All the Britons left the camp, and a league began to be formed.

XXXI.

1. When the Britons learned what had happened to Caesar's ships they did not send hostages to him. 2. He suspected that they would not send hostages. 3. From the fact that many of the ships were severely disabled,

he suspected that he should have to use the timber of these vessels for repairing the others. 4. Corn was collected by Caesar from that district because the Romans had not brought a supply of it from Gaul. 5. All things which were of need for repairing the vessels which had been wrecked were brought from the continent. 6. These matters were carried out by the soldiers with the greatest zeal. 7. He lost twelve ships at that time; still he was able to sail to the continent with the rest. 8. Many of the ships were very severely damaged at that time by the storm which suddenly arose. 9. Building material was collected by Caesar for repairing ships.

XXXII.

1. The seventh legion had been sent to *forage* when Caesar saw a larger cloud of dust than usual in the direction in which the legion marched. 2. In front of the gates of the camp the soldiers on guard saw a great cloud of dust. 3. The cohorts which were on guard at once set out in that direction in which the enemy was marching. 4. Our men were hard pressed by the enemy and with difficulty kept their ground. 5. "Do you see," says he, "a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction in which the enemy's forces are?" 6. When the forces which were on guard before the gates of the camp had set out, in that direction the other cohorts immediately followed them. 7. While our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy who were skulking in the woods suddenly attacked them. 8. Our ranks were thrown into great confusion because the enemy suddenly attacked our men. 9. The enemy suddenly surrounded our men with many forces. 10. The enemy suspected that our forces would come to that spot to reap the corn.

XXXIII.

1. At first they ride around everywhere and then work their way in among the horsemen when they leap down from their chariots and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 2. Darts are hurled from all sides by the enemy against our troops, and when once they have thrown our men into disorder they fight on foot. 3. The Britons exhibited in battle the activity of cavalry and the steadiness of foot soldiers. 4. They even on a downward slope rein in their horses when at full gallop. 5. In a moment they are able to check their horses even when running at full gallop. 6. They are accustomed to run along the whole length of the pole, and to stand on the yoke. 7. Often have our men seen them on a steep slope rein their steeds. 8. When they were hard pressed by the Romans they had a safe retreat to their chariots. 9. The sheer terror caused by the horses and the rumbling of the wheels generally threw the ranks of our men into confusion.

XXXIV.

1. When our men had recovered from their fear, they thought it was time to provoke a battle. 2. For several successive days the enemy were prevented by a storm from offering battle. 3. There is a great opportunity to free our country for ever, if we drive the enemy out of the island. 4. We thought this a most important time for engaging in battle. 5. Our men were not able to leave the camp on account of the severe storms which

followed for several days. 6. He collected all his infantry and cavalry together into one place. 8. What a fine opportunity you will have of driving the Romans from their camp, if only you collected all your forces against them. 8. Our men were greatly disconcerted by the Britons, but at the arrival of Caesar they recovered from fear. 9. They told their countrymen that it would be an easy matter to drive out the Romans, if they would attack them with all their forces.

XXXV.

1. If the enemy are repulsed in battle, they easily escape danger in consequence of their speed. 2. Caesar said that the enemy would escape by flight, as they had done on the days previous. 3. Caesar obtained about thirty horses from Commius Atrebas, and pursued the enemy. 4. The legions were drawn up in battle array in front of the camp. 5. The onset of our men could not be withstood by the enemy who turned their backs in flight. 6. Several of the enemy were slain when they were overtaken by our men. 7. Our men followed the enemy on that day as far as they could. 8. Before the Romans withdrew to their camp they burnt all the houses of the enemy. 9. The thirty horsemen (of whom mention has been made before), pursued the enemy and killed several of them.

XXXVI.

1. The enemy sent ambassadors on the same day to the Roman camp to treat for peace. 2. "I demand," says Caesar, "double the number of hostages I formerly demanded, and I order you to bring them to the continent." 3. "I must not," says he, "expose my ships to an equinoctial storm." 4. Though they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 5. He was not able to reach port with two merchantmen. 6. These two merchantmen were carried down to a lower part of the island. 7. At midnight he set sail for Britain with all the ships. 8. Although they set sail at midnight they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 9. Caesar will obtain favourable weather at daybreak.

XXXVII.

1. Caesar disembarked about three hundred soldiers on that day. 2. He set out to Britain after he subdued the Morinii. 3. This people was induced by the hope of booty to attack our camp. 4. If you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. When they had formed themselves into a circle, hastily they rushed with a shout against the foe. 6. All the cavalry was sent by Caesar to aid the Roman foot. 7. The battle lasted for more than four hours and several of our troops fell in battle. 8. Our men slew a great number of the enemy in battle, who threw away their arms. 9. Many of our friends received wounds in that battle.

XXXVIII.

1. These legions were led back from Britain against the Morinii. 2. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of the three hundred whom the Morinii had surrendered. 3. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw down their arms and fled. 4. We have no place to re-

treat to. 5. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place for refuge. 6. They hid themselves in the swamps; but all the rest fell into the hands of the lieutenant. 7. They cut down all the corn which was in the fields. 8. Caesar decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days. 9. Caesar said that all the enemy withdrew to the thick woods, where they pitched their camp. 10. The houses of the enemy were all burned down by the soldiers of the Roman army, after the battle was fought.

School and College Text Books

Applied Psychology—An Introduction to the Principles and Practice of Education. By J. A. McLellan, M.A., LL.D. $1.00

Bi-Lingual Readers—First Reader, Part I. .... 10c.
" Part II. .... 15c.
Second Book .... 25c.
Third " .... 35c.

Book-keeping Blanks—For Examinations. For use with McLean's High School Book-keeping. Contains all necessary blanks and forms for book-keeping examinations .... 50c.

Botanical Note Book—New Edition, illustrated. Containing Blanks for description of plants, leaves, and flowers. By F. W. Merchant, M.A. .... 25c.

Chaucer's Prologue—Clarendon Press. Edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, Litt. D. Special Canadian Edition .... 30c.

Chemical Note Book—For Class use with Knight's Chemistry. Containing spaces for observations, conclusions, answers to problems, points worth remarking, etc .... 20c.

Cicero's Pro Lege Manilia—Edited by Professor A. S. Wilkins, M.A., LL.D. .... 60c.

Elementary Algebra—By Charles Smith, M.A. Second Edition. Revised and Enlarged $1.00

Elementary Trigonometry—By J. B. Lock, M.A., Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Special Canadian Edition .$1.00

Hall and Stevens' Euclid, Books I. to VI. and XI. $1.00

High School History of England and Canada—By Arabella B. Buckley and W. J. Robertson, B.A., LL.B. Authorized by Education Department .... 65c.

Homer's Odyssey, Books VII. to XII.—With Introduction, Notes, and Table of Homeric Forms, by W. W. Merry, D.D. Clarendon Press $1.00

Irvine's Statics and Dynamics—By W. H. Irvine, B.A., Mathematical Master, Coll. Inst., Kingston .... 50c.

Lessons in French—Fasquelle and Sykes. Complete. Authorized by Education Department .... 75c.

Lessons in French, Part II.—By F. H. Sykes, M.A. Authorized by Education Department .... 25c.

SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT BOOKS.

Plato's Laches—With Introduction and Notes by M. T. TATHAM, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford .... 60c.

Public School Speller and Word-Book—New and Enlarged Edition. Part IV. contains Latin and Greek Roots, 272 pages. By G. W. JOHNSON, Upper Canada College ....30c.

Quick's Educational Reformers—Preface by W. T. HARRIS..$1.25

Riehl's Culturgeschichtliche Novellen—Pitt Press Edition. Notes and Index by H. J. WOLSTENHOLME, B.A. In one volume with **Schiller's Der Taucher**, Notes by W. H. VANDERSMISSEN, M.A. $1.50

Tennyson's Poems—Complete Edition. Cloth..............$1.50

Todhunter's Algebra for Beginners—By I. TODHUNTER, M.A..60c.

Todhunter's Large Algebra—For use of Schools and Colleges. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Canadian Edition $1.75

Todhunter's Trigonometry for Beginners—By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Canadian Edition .... 65c.

Todhunter's Euclid—For the use of Schools and Colleges. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. ....75c.

Todhunter's Euclid, Books I., II., & III. ....40c.

HENDERSON'S CLASSICS.

The following Classics, with Notes, Vocabulary, etc. By JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM, Bks. I. & II. Notes, Vocabulary, Maps, and Exercises ....75c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM, Bks. III. & IV. Notes, Charts, Maps, Vocabulary, and Exercises ....75c.

(Also in separate volumes, each 50c.)

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITANNICUM. With Life of Caesar, etc...50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM, Bk. I. With Life of Cicero, etc. ......50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM, Bk. II. With Life of Cicero, etc. .....50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID, Bk. I. With Life of Vergil, etc...........50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID, Bk. V. With Life of Vergil, etc..........60c.

TEACHERS' DESK HELPS.

Exercises and Examination Questions in English Grammar—By M. F. LIBBY, B.A. Second Edition....................35c.

Practical Exercises in English Composition—By H. I. STRANG, B.A. Goderich. Cloth ....25c.

Simple Rules in Arithmetic—For use in Second Book Classes. By R. T. MARTIN, Head Master Park School, Toronto..........10c.

Slips of Tongue and Pen—Containing "Common Errors," "Grammatical Points," "Synonyms and Opposites," etc., etc. By J. H. LONG, M.A., LL.B...40c.

Smith's Language Exercises—For Pupils in 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Book Classes. Cloth ....25c.

Strang's Exercises in False Syntax, and other Forms of Bad English.—For the use of Teachers and Candidates preparing for Departmental & Matriculation Examinations. By By H. I. STRANG, B.A. 35c.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

Homer's Iliad, Book I,—With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by REV. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. ....30c.

Horace Odes, Book I,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Horace Odes, Book II,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Horace Odes, Book III,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Livy, Book XXI,—Adapted from Mr. Cape's Edition. Notes and Vocabulary by J. E. MELHUISH, M.A.........................30c.

Plato's Euthyphro—With Introduction and Notes by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge ....40c.

Vergil's Aeneid, Book III,—Notes & Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Vergil's Aeneid, Book IV,—Notes and Vocabulary by REV. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A...30c.

Xenophon's Anabasis, Book IV,—With Notes and Vocabulary by REV. E. D. STONE, M.A. ....30c.

